

BIBLICAL THEOLOGY

*"Have I not written to you excellent things of counsels and knowledge,
that I may make you know the certainty of the words of truth,
that you may answer words of truth to those who send to you?"
(Proverbs 22:20-21)*

Harvestime International Network
<http://www.harvestime.org>

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
An Introduction To Theology	3
Chapter One: Paterology: God The Father	6
Chapter Two: Christology: Jesus Christ	27
Chapter Three: Pneumatology: Holy Spirit	59
Chapter Four: Angelology: Angels	91
Chapter Five: Demonology: Satan And Demons	105
Chapter Six: Bibliology: The Bible	121
Chapter Seven: Harmartiology: Sin	144
Chapter Eight: Soteriology: Salvation	157
Chapter Nine: Ecclesiology: The Church	171
Chapter Ten: Eschatology: Prophecy, The End-times, Eternity	185
Epilogue	198
Answers To Self-Tests	199

AN INTRODUCTION TO THEOLOGY

THE DEFINITION OF THEOLOGY

The word "theology" comes from two Greek words, *theos* meaning "God" and *logos* meaning "the word about" or "the study of" God as He is revealed in the Scriptures. Simply defined, theology is an in-depth study of the Holy Bible to discover what God has said about Himself, His purposes, His plans, and His promises.

THE SUBJECTS OF THEOLOGY

The major subjects of theology includes the study of:

- Paterology: The study of God, the Father.
- Christology: The study of the Son, Jesus Christ.
- Pneumatology: The study of the Holy Spirit.
- Angelology: The study of angels.
- Demonology: The study of Satan and demons.
- Bibliology: The study of the Holy Bible, which is the revelation of God.
- Harmartiology: The study of sin.
- Soteriology: The study of salvation which is God's provision for sin.
- Ecclesiology: The study of the Church.
- Eschatology: The study of biblical prophecy, the end-times, and eternity.

These words are not used in the Bible, but are terms used by scholars to describe the major subjects of theology. Entire volumes have been written on each of these subjects--a book could easily be written on each topic. The purpose of this study, however, is to provide a summary for independent learning and/or teaching of basic theological concepts. It uses the Scriptures as the primary resource, and does not deal with conflicting theological arguments.

THE CENTRAL THEME

The Bible reveals the mystery of God's plan which is the unifying theme of the Bible. It is the revelation of Jesus Christ as the Savior of sinful mankind. Jesus explained how the Old Testament centered on Him: *"And He said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms concerning me" (Luke 24:44)*. With this introduction, Jesus continued and *"...opened He their understanding that they might understand the scriptures" (Luke 24:45)*. What was the key Jesus gave them to understanding the Scriptures? The fact that its major theme focused on Him: *"...Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day: And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in His name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. And Ye are witnesses of these things" (Luke 24:46-48)*.

The Old and New Testaments both tell the story of Jesus. The Old Testament prepares us for His coming and the New Testament tells how it happened. This unites the entire Bible and the study of Biblical theology in one major theme: Jesus Christ.

THE IMPORTANCE OF THEOLOGY

There are several important reasons for studying and understanding the major teachings of Scripture.

-Theology is important for personal spiritual growth and development so that you may *"...grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ" (2 Peter 3:18)*. Growth takes time in the natural world as well as the spiritual world. Some theological truths can only be understood over a period of time. For example, if you are a new believer, you may not understand the faithfulness of God as well as someone who has served the Lord for years.

-Theology is important in order to avoid doctrinal error. The first sin resulted from the enemy questioning *"..Has God said?" (Genesis 3:1)*. If you do not know what God has said in His Word regarding foundational issues of faith, then you may fall into doctrinal error and--ultimately--into sin.

-Theology is vital in order to be able to explain Biblical truths to unbelievers and be prepared to give an answer for the hope which is within you (1 Peter 3:15).

-Theology is essential for your spiritual walk and ministry. As in all Bible study, you should seek heart knowledge--not just head knowledge--through application of what you learn. The purpose of revelation is not just to obtain information, but to allow revelation to result in application to and transformation of your life.

HOW TO USE THIS STUDY

You may choose to study or teach the entire course on Biblical Theology or you can select individual topics and focus on a single subject. To receive the full benefits of this study:

-Theology must be approached with a spiritual mind because *"...the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned" (1 Corinthians 2:14)*. A spiritual mind is one that has been transformed by the new birth experience and is immersed in and consumed by a passion for God and His Word.

-All verses referenced in the manual should be read and studied.

-Additional Harvestime International Network materials that relate specifically to the theological subjects discussed in this study will be mentioned where applicable and should be consulted.

SELF-TEST

1. Define theology.

2. Define Paterology.

3. Define Christology.

4. Define Pneumatology.

5. Define Angelology.

6. Define Demonology.

7. Define Bibliology.

8. Define Harmartiology.

9. Define Soteriology.

10. Define Ecclesiology.

11. Define Eschatology.

12. Upon whom does the subject of the Bible and Biblical theology focus?

13. List four reasons why it is important to study theology.

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

CHAPTER ONE

PATEROLOGY

God The Father

DEFINITION

Paterology comes from two Greek words which mean "father" and "word". When combined and used in terms of theology, they mean "the study of the Father". Common subjects studied in Paterology include the knowledge of the existence of God, the Trinity of God, the attributes of God, the names of God, His sovereignty, and His purposes and plans.

THE KNOWLEDGE OF THE EXISTENCE GOD

We obtain knowledge of God in the following ways:

-From Creation.

The first words in Genesis are: *"In the beginning God created..."* Genesis chapters 1-3 record that God is the creator. If you do not believe these first five words, then you will be unable to understand or accept the remaining truths of biblical theology. God created both the natural and spiritual worlds.

Here are some other verses confirming God as Creator:

O Lord of hosts, God of Israel, enthroned above the cherubim, you are the God, you alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth; you have made heaven and earth. (Isaiah 37:16)

Ah, Lord God! It is you who have made the heavens and the earth by your great power and by your outstretched arm! Nothing is too hard for you. (Jeremiah 32:17)

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. He was in the beginning with God. All things were made through him, and without him was not any thing made that was made. (John 1:1-3)

For by him all things were created, in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities—all things were created through him and for him. (Colossians 1:16)

God created everything--the universe, the earth, plants, animals, water, light, seasons, etc. His greatest creation was man who was made in His image.

All creation continues to be sustained by God:

He waters the mountains from His upper chambers; The earth is satisfied with the fruit of His works. He causes the grass to grow for the cattle, And vegetation for the labor of man, So that he may bring forth food from the earth, (Psalm 104:13-14)

He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together. (Colossians 1:17)

And He is the radiance of His glory and the exact representation of His nature, and upholds all things by the word of His power When He had made purification of sins, He sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high. (Hebrews 1:3)

Creation actually declares and confirms the existence of God:

The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handywork. Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night sheweth knowledge. There is no speech nor language, where their voice is not heard. (Psalm 19:1-3)

The heavens declare his righteousness, and all the people see his glory. (Psalm 97:6)

For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse. (Romans 1:20)

-From History.

History confirms the existence of Jesus Christ, the Son of God--His birth, ministry, death, and resurrection. Historical records of kings, wars, and other events in the Bible are also confirmed by history. Archeological digs have also confirmed many cities, villages, and events mentioned in the Bible.

-From Tradition.

Accurate knowledge of God is passed from one generation to the next.

-From Experience.

Through the new birth experience, people come to a knowledge of the living God. Experiences such as dreams and visions may also provide knowledge of the true God, as do experiences of observing God at work in the lives of others in miracles and transformation.

-From Revelation.

The greatest confirmation of the existence of God is found in the Word of God through numerous statements such as these:

I am God, even thy God...(Psalm 50:7)

Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I am God, and there is none else. (Isaiah 45:22)

...I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me. (Isaiah 46:9)

THE TRINITY OF GOD

The one true God is revealed in three distinct personalities of the Father, the Son Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit. They are one in essence, one God with three distinct natures. The doctrine of the Trinity must be accepted by faith, as it is difficult to grasp with our finite minds.

The first person of the Trinity of God is called the Father. He is the father of:

-Israel: Exodus 4:22

-The angels: Job 38:7

-Jesus Christ: John 17:1

-All believers: John 1:12-13

In the Old Testament, the Hebrew word for God, "Elohim", is a plural word. Plural pronouns are used of God (Genesis 1:26), and the angel of Jehovah is deemed to be Old Testament appearances of Christ (Judges 2:1-5). The strongest Old Testament verse for the doctrine of the Trinity is:

Come ye near unto me, hear ye this; I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; from the time that it was, there am I: and now the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me. (Isaiah 48:16)

In the New Testament, the Father, Son and Spirit are confirmed to be divine, to do the works of God, and to be worshipped. Much is written about the deity of Jesus (examples in John 1:1; Titus 2:13), yet He is distinguished from the Father and the Spirit. The Spirit is also God (Matthew 28:19-20; Acts 5:3-5), but distinguished from the Father and the Son.

God has a triune nature with three distinct personalities, yet He is one God:

Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God is one Lord. (Deuteronomy 6:4)

There are several Scriptures which confirm this triune nature of God. When Jesus was being baptized by John the Baptist in the Jordan River, God spoke and the Holy Spirit descended:

And Jesus, when He was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon Him: And lo, a voice from Heaven saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. (Matthew 3:16-17)

Prior to returning to Heaven after His ministry on earth, Jesus spoke of the Holy Spirit coming from God:

But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, He shall testify of me. (John 15:26)

The Apostle Peter spoke of the triune nature of God:

If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye; for the Spirit of glory and of God resteth upon you: on their part He is evil spoken of, but on your part He is glorified. (1 Peter 4:14)

The Apostle Paul spoke of the Trinity in his writings:

For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending His own Son, in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh. (Romans 8:2-3)

The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all. (2 Corinthians 13:14)

For through Him (the Son) we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father. (Ephesians 2:18)

The book of Acts also verifies the triune nature of God:

Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, He (Jesus) hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear. (Acts 2:33)

THE ATTRIBUTES OF GOD

God the Father, Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit are described in the Bible in terms of their nature. When we speak of "nature" we mean basic qualities which describe God. These qualities are also known as "attributes" which means "characteristics." The Bible reveals that God is...

Eternal.

The Trinity of God is eternal with no beginning and no ending:

Lord, Thou hast been our dwelling place in all generations. Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever Thou hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, Thou art God. (Psalms 90:1-2)

And Abraham planted a grove in Beersheba, and called there on the name of the

Lord, the everlasting God. (Genesis 21:33)

The eternal nature of God can be illustrated by a circle. The circle has no visible starting point or ending point, yet it exists.

A Spirit.

God is a spirit. This means He is without flesh and blood and therefore invisible to the natural eyes of man:

*God is a Spirit: and they that worship Him must worship Him in spirit and in truth.
(John 4:24)*

Sovereign.

God is sovereign--the ruling power over all the universe. Read Ephesians 1 and Romans 9.

Omnipresent.

God is present everywhere:

For the eyes of the Lord run to and fro throughout the whole earth... (2 Chronicles 16:9)

The eyes of the Lord are in every place, beholding the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3)

Whither shall I go from Thy Spirit? Or whither shall I flee from Thy presence? If I ascend up into Heaven, Thou art there: if I make my bed in Hell, behold, Thou are there. (Psalms 139:7-8)

Omniscient.

God knows all things:

...Thou knowest it altogether. (Psalms 139:4)

...God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things. (1 John 3:20)

*...But all things are naked and opened unto the eyes of Him with whom we have to do.
(Hebrews 4:13)*

Omnipotent.

God is all powerful:

...I am the Almighty God... (Genesis 17:1)

...With God all things are possible. (Matthew 19:26)

...For the Lord God omnipotent reigneth. (Revelation 19:6)

*God hath spoken once; twice have I heard this; that power belongeth unto God.
(Psalms 62:11)*

Unchanging.

God does not change His person, nature, or divine purposes:

For I am the Lord, I change not... (Malachi 3:6)

Jesus Christ the same yesterday, to day, and for ever. (Hebrews 13:8)

Holy/righteous.

God is sinless, absolutely pure:

...Ye shall be holy: for I the Lord your God am holy. (Leviticus 19:2)

Just.

God is fair and impartial in judgment:

...A God of truth and without iniquity, just and right is He. (Deuteronomy 32:4)

Faithful.

God keeps His promises and is absolutely trustworthy.

...He abideth faithful: He cannot deny Himself. (2 Timothy 2:13)

Benevolent.

God is good, kind, and desires your welfare. He is benevolent towards all of His creatures:

The Lord is good to all: and His tender mercies are over all His works. (Psalms 145:9)

Merciful.

God shows continuous mercy to sinful mankind:

...The Lord God, merciful and gracious, long suffering, and abundant in goodness and truth. Keeping mercy for thousands... (Exodus 34:6-7)

Gracious.

God shows undeserved kindness to sinful man:

...For I am gracious. (Exodus 22:27)

The Lord is gracious, and full of compassion; slow to anger, and of great mercy. (Psalms 145:8)

Loving.

God is love:

He that loveth not knoweth not God; for God is love. (1 John 4:8)

Longsuffering.

God "suffers long"--meaning that He does not immediately judge sin, but appeals to all men to repent and patiently waits for them to acknowledge their sins and turn to Him.

Wise.

God shows deep understanding and keen discernment.

The Lord by wisdom hath founded the earth; by understanding hath He established the heavens. (Proverbs 3:19)

Infinite.

God is not subject to natural and human limitations. He is not subject to the limitations of space:

But will God indeed dwell on the earth? behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain thee: how much less this house that I have builded? (1 Kings 8:27)

He is not subject to the limitations of time:

The Lord shall reign for ever and ever. (Exodus 15:18)

See also 1 Kings 8:27; Exodus 15:18; Deuteronomy 33:27; Nehemiah 9:5; Psalms 90:2; Jeremiah 10:10; and Revelation 4:8-10.

NAMES OF GOD

God has revealed himself in many ways in the Holy Bible, including His names through which He has revealed His nature and character. The word "God" (one who is worshiped) is a title

men use to describe the Supreme Being. In the Bible names are more than an identification. They are descriptive of the bearer of the name. The names for God include:

-Jehovah:	Means Lord.
-Jehovah-Rapha:	"The Lord that healeth": Exodus 15:26
-Jehovah-Nissi:	"The Lord our banner": Exodus 17:8-15
-Jehovah-Shalom:	"The Lord our peace": Judges 6:24
-Jehovah-Ra'ah:	"The Lord my shepherd": Psalms 23:1
-Jehovah-Tsidkenu:	"The Lord our righteousness": Jeremiah 23:6
-Jehovah-Jireh:	"The Lord who provides": Genesis 22:14
-Jehovah-Shammah:	"The Lord is there": Ezekiel 48:35
-Elohim:	Means God and is used where the creative power of God is implied: Acts 17:28; John 1:12-13
-Father:	Abba--Heavenly Father: Romans 8:15
-Adonai:	Means Lord or Master: Exodus 23:17; Isaiah 10:16,33
-El:	This is often used in combination with other words for God:
-EI Shaddai:	"The God who is sufficient for the needs of His people": Exodus 6:3
-Elolam:	"The everlasting God": Genesis 21:33
-El Elyon:	"Most high God, exalted above all other gods": Genesis 14:18-20

THE SOVEREIGNTY OF GOD

The best statement of the sovereign plan of God is the summary in the Westminster Shorter Catechism: "The decrees of God are His eternal purpose, according to the counsel of His will, whereby, for His own glory, He hath foreordained whatsoever comes to pass."

The details of the plan of God are revealed clearly in Romans 9 and Ephesians 1:11: "...in whom we also were called, having been foreordained according to the plan of him who works out all things in conformity with the counsel of his will."

These decrees of God are to be distinguished from God's will in regards to His commands and prohibitions which are clearly laid out in His Word. For example, the fall of man--which resulted from the command to "not to eat the fruit"--was foreknown by God, but He is not the author of sin in any way. Mankind has free will and is responsible for their choices. The command of God was not to eat the fruit, yet He knew that man would eat the fruit.

Jesus taught that His death was not an accident, but rather according to the foreordained and decreed plan of God (Luke 22:22). Peter states regarding the crucifixion that Jesus was handed over to the people by "God's set purpose and foreknowledge". Yet in neither of these cases are the sins of these people or the moral and spiritual consequences minimized. People are responsible for their choices, even though those choices were foreknown by God.

Jesus said "woe" to the person who betrayed Him and Peter referred to the men as "wicked" who crucified Him (Acts 2:22-24). The early Church implicated Herod, Pontius Pilate, the Jews, and

Gentiles in this awful deed, claiming that they had done what “God’s hand and will determined beforehand should happen”. Again, this confirms that God knows the future because He decreed what would come to pass.

We are predestined in one sense, in that all mankind is predisposed to sin because of the basic sin nature:

Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned. (Romans 5:12)

According to Romans 8:29, however, God's predetermined plan is that we all be conformed to the image of His Son through salvation and the new birth experience: "...For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son." A sovereign God knows who will chose His plan, and who will reject it--yet without violating man's free will.

God is sovereign over all the world:

- He controls the physical universe: Matthew 5:45; Acts 14:17.
- He controls animals: Psalm 147:9; Matthew 6:26.
- He controls nations: Daniel 2:38-39; 4:17,25; Romans 13:1.
- He controls individuals: Galatians 1:15-16; Luke 1:52; Philippians 4:19; Matthew 10:30.
- He controls the destiny of the wicked: Psalm 11:6.

THE PURPOSES OF GOD

God's purpose is not a vague purpose or a "hoped for" purpose. The purpose of God is clearly communicated in His Word. Perhaps one of the best summaries of His purpose is given in the book of Ephesians. Here is God's statement of purpose:

According to the eternal purpose which He purposed in Christ Jesus our Lord...Having made known unto us the mystery of His will, according to His good pleasure which He hath purposed in Himself; That in the dispensation of the fullness of times, He might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in Heaven, and which are on earth, even in Him. (Ephesians 3:11;1:9-10)

God wants to bring all men into right spiritual relationship with Himself:

The Lord is not slack concerning His promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance. (2 Peter 3:9)

God's purpose is that all people experience forgiveness of sins through Jesus Christ, come into right relationship with Him, and become part of the Kingdom of God (John 3). The Bible assures that God's purposes will be accomplished:

The Lord of hosts hath sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand. (Isaiah 14:24)

This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations. For the Lord of hosts hath purposed and who shall disannul it? and his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back? (Isaiah 14:26-27)

THE PLANS OF GOD

God not only has an established purpose, He implements plans to achieve that purpose. God uses individuals, nations, Jesus, the Holy Spirit, and the Church to accomplish His plans.

Individuals.

From the beginning of time as we now know it, God has worked through individuals to accomplish His purposes. The Bible is filled with stories of how God used different men and women as part of His plan.

In Old Testament times God raised up great leaders like Noah, Abraham, Joseph, and Moses. He also anointed prophets, kings, and judges to accomplish His purposes. In New Testament times, God used individuals like John the Baptist, the disciples of Jesus, Paul, Timothy, Barnabas and many others.

God even took sinful men who would not conform to His plan and reversed their evil plans to accomplish His purposes. God did not cause their sinful actions, but He worked through them and in spite of them to achieve His will. For example, God said regarding the wicked Pharaoh in Egypt:

And in very deed for this cause have I raised thee up, for to shew in thee my power; and that my name may be declared throughout all the earth. (Exodus 9:16)

Nations.

In Old Testament times God raised up the nation of Israel to accomplish His purpose in the world. As a nation, Israel was mandated to reveal God's plan to the heathen nations of the world. Repeatedly, they failed in this responsibility.

Because of this, judgment came upon Israel through the heathen nations which lived around them. God was so determined to accomplish His plan that He worked through the evil acts of these sinful nations, although He did not condone their actions and held them accountable.

Jesus Christ.

Early in history, God promised a Savior through whom forgiveness from sin would be available to all mankind. The promise was first given to Adam and Eve after their sin in the Garden of Eden. God said:

And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel. (Genesis 3:15)

This was the beginning of many promises of a Savior. For a long time God did not reveal the details of how He would accomplish this plan. It was a great mystery. Later, in the time of the Old Testament prophets, God shared additional details of His plan. In New Testament times, these details were fulfilled and the mystery revealed when God sent His only Son, the Lord Jesus Christ, to die for the sins of all mankind:

No longer was God's plan a mystery. His plans and purpose were revealed openly in Jesus Christ: Having made known unto us the mystery of His will, according to His good pleasure which He hath purposed in Himself; That in the dispensation of the fullness of times, He might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in Heaven, and which are on earth, even in Him. (Ephesians 1:9-10)

From childhood, Jesus knew God's purpose was to provide salvation for all mankind and restore all men and nations into fellowship with Him. Jesus lived His life on earth to accomplish God's purposes. Even as a child, Jesus was concerned--not with His own plans and purposes--but with those of God the Father. When His parents thought He was lost and eventually found Him...

...He said unto them, How is it that ye sought me? wist ye not that I must be about my Father's business? (Luke 2:49)

The ministry of Jesus focused on the purposes of God. Every plan, every decision, and every act focused on these purposes:

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because He hath anointed me to preach the Gospel to the poor, He hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised. To preach the acceptable year of the Lord. (Luke 4:18-19)

Jesus commissioned His followers, which includes all true believers, to fulfill God's purposes:

Go ye therefore and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost; Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. (Matthew 28:19-20)

The chapter on Christology in this study provides details on the ministry of Jesus.

The Holy Spirit.

The Holy Spirit is also part of God's plan. After Jesus returned to Heaven, a special power was given in an outpouring of the Holy Spirit described in Acts 2. This experience is called the baptism of the Holy Spirit. The power of the Holy Spirit was given to accomplish God's purposes in the world:

But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth. (Acts 1:8)

The Holy Spirit provides guidance and direction to believers to enable them to fulfill God's plans. Because the Holy Spirit knows the will of God, and because He searches and understands the spirit of man, He serves as the link between you and God to help you achieve these purposes:

And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God. (Romans 8:27)

The Holy Spirit works in partnership with you to accomplish God's will. As you speak God's Words, He convicts unbelievers of sin, leading them to accept the Gospel (John 16:7-11). The chapter on Pneumatology in this course provides additional teaching on the Holy Spirit.

The Church.

All true believers are part of the Church, which is now the instrument through which God works to accomplish His purpose and plans on earth:

And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ: To the intent [this means it is God's purpose] that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly places might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God [God's plan and purpose]. (Ephesians 3:9-10, TAB)

God works in the lives of believers who are members of the Church to accomplish His purposes:

For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do His good pleasure. (Philippians 2:13)

To "do His good pleasure" means He is working in you to accomplish His purposes in your life. This includes salvation, infilling of the Holy Spirit, using you to minister to others, and continuously conforming you to the image of His Son, Jesus Christ:

Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God. (Romans 6:13)

When you yield yourself to become "instruments of righteousness unto God" it means you bring your life and ministry in harmony with His purpose and plans. By doing this, you become instruments through which He can work:

Now then, we are ambassadors for Christ... (2 Corinthians 5:20)

We then, as workers together with Him... (2 Corinthians 6:1)

If God does not work in and through you, then all of your work is in vain:

Except the Lord build the house, they labor in vain that built it; except the Lord keep the city, the watchman waketh but in vain. (Psalms 127:1)

Your ministry will not succeed unless it is built upon the eternal purposes of God, rather than man:

...For if their purpose or activity is of human origin, it will fail. But if it is from God, you will not be able to stop these men. You will only find yourselves fighting against God. (Acts 5:38-39, NIV)

Additional teaching on God's plan for the Church is provided in the chapter on Ecclesiology in this course.

SELF-TEST

1. Define Paterology.

2. What are some of the subjects studied in Paterology?

3. Explain how the following provide knowledge of the existence of God.

-Creation.

-History.

-Tradition.

-Experience.

-Revelation.

4. Using the discussion on the Trinity of God in this chapter, summarize what this term means and identify the three persons in the Trinity.

5. List some scriptures given in this chapter that confirm the triune nature of God.

6. Define the attributes of God discussed in this chapter.

-Eternal: _____

-A spirit: _____

-Sovereign: _____

-Infinite: _____

-Omnipresent: _____

-Omniscient: _____

-Omnipotent: _____

-Unchanging: _____

-Holy/righteous: _____

-Just: _____

-Faithful: _____

-Benevolent: _____

-Merciful: _____

-Gracious: _____

-Loving: _____

-Longsuffering: _____

-Wise: _____

-Infinite: _____

7. What is the meaning of these names of God?

Jehovah: _____

Jehovah-Rapha: _____

Jehovah-Nissi: _____

- Jehovah-Shalom: _____
- Jehovah-Ra'ah: _____
- Jehovah-Tsidkenu: _____
- Jehovah-Jireh: _____
- Jehovah-Shammah: _____
- Elohim: _____
- Father: _____
- Adonai: _____
- El: _____
- El Shaddai: _____
- Elolam: _____
- El Elyon: _____

8. What is meant by the sovereign plan of God?

9. Using the discussion on the sovereign plan of God, answer the following questions:
 - Does God know the future?
 - Does His knowledge of the future eliminate man's free will of choice?

10. What scripture provides a summary of God's statement of purpose?

11. According to 2 Peter 3:9, what is God's desire?

12. What two verses assure that God's purposes will be accomplished?

13. Using the discussion in this chapter, summarize God's plan for individuals.

14. Using the discussion in this chapter, summarize God's plan for nations.

15. Using the discussion in this chapter, summarize God's plan for Jesus Christ.

16. Using the discussion in this chapter, summarize God's plan for the Holy Spirit.

17. Using the discussion in this chapter, summarize God's plan for the Church.

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

SUPPLEMENTAL STUDIES

1. Here are some false theories regarding God that you may encounter:
 - Atheism: Denies the existence of God.
 - Agnosticism: Says one does not know or cannot know whether or not there is a God.
 - Materialism: Claims the world is entirely a function of matter.
 - Polytheism: The belief in many different gods.
 - Pantheism: Claims God is everything and everything is God.
 - Deism: Believes God is only revealed through nature.
 - Animism: Claims all nature is alive with spirits which can help or harm mankind.
 - Dualism: Acknowledges only good and evil
 - Dynamism: Believes there is an impersonal life energy force pervading all things into which one can tap for good or evil.
 - Evolution: Claims all creatures evolved as a process of change, including man.
2. Using the following references, study more about Paterology.

God the Father:

Matthew 11:27; 19:17,26; 22:32; 23:9
Mark 12:26-27,29; 10:18,27
Luke 10:22; 18:19,27; 20:37-38
John 4:24; 5:17,37; 6:46; 10:29; 14:28,31; 15:8

God created the world:

Genesis 1:1-32; 2:3-4; 5:1-2
Nehemiah 9:6
Job 38:1-41
Psalms 74:17; 89:11; 104:1-35; 115:15; 121:2; 124:8; 134:3; 136:6; 148:5
Proverbs 8:23-31
Ecclesiastes 3:11
Isaiah 40:28; 42:5; 43:1,7; 44:24; 45:8,12,18; 48:13; 54:16; 65:17
Jeremiah 10:12; 27:5; 31:22; 32:17; 51:15
Ezekiel 28:13,15
Amos 4:13
Zechariah 12:1
Malachi 2:10
John 1:3
Acts 4:24; 17:24
Romans 1:20
Ephesians 2:10; 3:9; 4:24
Revelation 10:6

God sustains the world by His power:

Psalms 75:3; 95:4
Colossians 1:16-17
Hebrews 1:3; 6:7
2 Peter 3:4
Revelation 4:11

God's triune nature:

Exodus 20:3
Deuteronomy 4:35,39; 6:4
1 Samuel 2:2
2 Samuel 7:22
1 Kings 8:60
2 Kings 19:15
Nehemiah 9:6
Isaiah 44:6-8
1 Timothy 1:17

His omnipresence:

Genesis 28:15-16
Deuteronomy 4:39
Joshua 2:11
Proverbs 15:3
Isaiah 66:1
Jeremiah 23:23-24
Amos 9:2-4,6
Acts 7:48-49
Ephesians 1:23.

His omniscience:

Genesis 18:18,19
2 Kings 8:10,13
Chronicles 28:9
Psalms 94:9; 139:1-16; 147:4-5
Proverbs 15:3
Isaiah 29:15-16; 40:28
Jeremiah 1:4,5
Ezekiel 11:5
Daniel 2:22,28
Amos 4:13
Luke 16:15
Acts 15:8,18
Romans 8:27,29
1 Corinthians 3:20
2 Timothy 2:19

Hebrews 4:13
1 Peter 1:2
1 John 3:20

His omnipotence:

Genesis 1:1; 17:1; 18:14
Exodus 15:7
Deuteronomy 3:24; 32:39
1 Chronicles 16:25
Job 40:2
Isaiah 40:12-15
Jeremiah 32:17
Ezekiel 10:5
Daniel 3:17; 4:35
Amos 4:13; 5:8
Zechariah 12:1
Matthew 19:26
Revelation 15:3; 19:6.

His holiness:

Exodus 15:11
Leviticus 11:44-45; 20:26
Joshua 24:19
1 Samuel 2:2
Psalms 5:4; 111:9; 145:17
Isaiah 6:3; 43:14-15
Jeremiah 23:9
Luke 1:49
James 1:13
1 Peter 1:15-16
Revelation 4:8; 15:3-4.

His faithfulness:

Exodus 34:6
Numbers 23:19
Deuteronomy 4:31
Joshua 21:43-45; 23:14
1 Samuel 15:29
Jeremiah 4:28
Isaiah 25:1
Ezekiel 12:25
Daniel 9:4
Micah 7:20
Luke 18:7-8
Romans 3:4; 15:8

1 Corinthians 1:9; 10:13
2 Corinthians 1:20
1 Thessalonians 5:24
2 Thessalonians 3:3
2 Timothy 2:13
Hebrews 6:18; 10:23
1 Peter 4:19
Revelation 15:3

His benevolence:

Psalms 25:8
Nahum 1:7
Psalms 145:9
Romans 2:4
Matthew 5:45
Psalms 31:19
Acts 14:17
Psalms 68:10; 85:5.

His mercy:

Titus 3:5
Lamentations 3:22
Daniel 9:9
Jeremiah 3:12
Psalms 32:5
Isaiah 49:13; 54:7.

His love:

Deuteronomy 7:8
Ephesians 2:4
Zephaniah 3:17
Isaiah 49:15-16
Romans 8:39
Hosea 11:4
Jeremiah 31:3.

CHAPTER TWO

CHRISTOLOGY

Jesus Christ

DEFINITION

Christology is composed of the words *Christ*, referring to Jesus Christ and *ology*, meaning "the study of." Thus, the word "Christology" deals with the study of Jesus Christ. It is one of three areas related to the study of the Triune God which also includes Paterology (the study of God the Father) and Pneumatology (the study of the Holy Spirit).

Common topics studied in Christology include the preexistence of Christ; prophecies about Him; His humanity and deity; His attributes, names, and titles; His birth, early life, ministry, death, resurrection, ascension, and return; and the offices He holds.

The study of Christology is important because Jesus is the unifying theme of all scripture, as revealed when *"...beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself"* (Luke 24:27).

THE PREEXISTENCE OF CHRIST

Prior to His earthly life, Jesus existed in eternity as the second person of the Triune Godhead. He was with God in the beginning and was God (John 1:1). John says the "word" became flesh, which implies that Jesus existed previous to His incarnation--a word which means that He became flesh (John 1:1,14).

Jesus Himself said that He had glory with the Father before the world was (John 17:5); that He had come from the Father (John 5:43; 6:38); and that He had existed before Abraham (John 8:58). Revelation 22:13 also confirms Christ's eternal existence when He declares: *"I am the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end."*

The Apostle Paul said that Christ was rich, but became poor; that He was "in the form of God" but "humbled himself"; and that He was "before all things" (Colossians 1:17). These phrases all confirm that Jesus existed prior to coming to earth (see also 1 Corinthians 15:45; and Philippians 2:6).

PROPHECIES ABOUT JESUS CHRIST

The Old Testament contains many prophecies about Jesus and the New Testament confirms their validity. A prophecy is an immediate word from God which reveals things about the future which cannot be known by natural wisdom. These prophecies reveal how, when, and where Jesus was to be born and details about His life, ministry, death, and resurrection--such as...

-The Messiah would be born in Bethlehem: Micah 5:2; Matthew 2:1; Luke 2:4-6.

- The Messiah would be born of a woman: Genesis 3:15; Matthew 1:20; Galatians 4:4.
- The Messiah would be born of a virgin: Isaiah 7:14; Matthew 1:22-23; Luke 1:26-31.
- The Messiah would come from the line of Abraham: Genesis 12:3; 22:18; Matthew 1:1; Romans 9:5.
- The Messiah would be a descendant of Isaac: Genesis 17:19; 21:12; Luke 3:34.
- The Messiah would be a descendant of Jacob: Numbers 24:17; Matthew 1:2.
- The Messiah would come from the tribe of Judah: Genesis 49:10; Luke 3:33; Hebrews 7:14.
- The Messiah would be heir to King David's throne: 2 Samuel 7:12-13; Isaiah 9:7; Luke 1:32-33; Romans 1:3.
- The Messiah's throne will be eternal: Psalm 45:6-7; Daniel 2:44; Luke 1:33; Hebrews 1:8-12.
- He would be called Immanuel: Isaiah 7:14; Matthew 1:23.
- He would be the Son of God: Psalm 2:7; Hebrews 1:5; 5:5.
- He would spend time in Egypt: Hosea 11:1; Matthew 2:14-15.
- A massacre of children would happen at His birthplace: Jeremiah 31:15; Matthew 2:16-18.
- A messenger would prepare the way for Him: Isaiah 40:3-5; Malachi 3:1; Matthew 11:10-13; Luke 3:3-6.
- He would be preceded by the ministry of Elijah: Malachi 4:5-6; Matthew 11:13-14.
- He would be rejected by His own people: Psalm 69:8; Isaiah 53:3; John 1:11; 7:5.
- He would be a prophet: Deuteronomy 18:15; Acts 3:20-22.
- He would be declared to be the Son of God: Psalm 2:7; Matthew 3:16-17.
- He would be called a Nazarene: Isaiah 11:1; Matthew 2:23.
- He would be called King: Psalm 2:6; Zechariah 9:9; Matthew 27:37; Mark 11:7-11.
- He would bring light: Isaiah 9:1-2; Matthew 4:13-16.
- He would teach using parables: Psalm 78:2-4; Isaiah 6:9-10; Matthew 13:10-15, 34-35.
- He would heal the brokenhearted: Isaiah 61:1-2; Luke 4:18-19.
- He would be a priest after the order of Melchizedek: Psalm 110:4; Hebrews 5:5-6.
- He would receive praise from the children: Psalm 8:2; Matthew 21:16.
- He would enter Jerusalem in triumph: Zechariah 9:9; Matthew 21:4-5; John 12:14-15.
- He would be hated without cause: Psalm 35:19.
- He would be betrayed: Psalm 41:9; Zechariah 11:12-13; Luke 22:47-48; Matthew 26:14-16.
- His disciples would scatter: Zechariah 13:7; Matthew 26:31,56; Mark 14:27,50.
- The betrayal funds would be used to buy a potter's field: Zechariah 11:12-13; Matthew 27:9-10.
- He would be falsely accused: Psalm 35:11; Mark 14:57-58.
- He would be silent before His accusers: Isaiah 53:7; Mark 15:4-5.
- He would be abused: Isaiah 50:6; Matthew 26:67; Psalm 69:4; John 15:24-25.
- He would be crucified with criminals: Isaiah 53:12; Matthew 27:38; Mark 15:27-28.
- His hands and feet would be pierced: Psalm 22:16; Zechariah 12:10; John 20:25-27.
- He would be offered vinegar to drink: Psalm 69:21; Matthew 27:34; John 19:28-30.
- He would be mocked: Psalm 22:7-8; Luke 23:35.
- He would bear our shame: Psalm 69:19; Matthew 27:28.
- Soldiers would gamble for His garments: Psalm 22:18; Luke 23:34; Matthew 27:35-36.
- He would be forsaken by God: Psalm 22:1; Matthew 27:46.
- He would pray for His enemies: Isaiah 53:12; Luke 23:34.
- He would be numbered with criminals: Isaiah 53:12; Luke 23:33.
- He would die by crucifixion: Isaiah 53:5-6; 10; John 19:16.

- He would thirst: Psalm 69:3; John 19:28.
- He would be stared at: Psalm 22:17; Matthew 27:36.
- He would commend His Spirit to God: Psalm 31:5; Luke 23:46.
- He would be the ultimate sacrifice for sin: Isaiah 53:5-12; Romans 5:6-8.
- His death would secure "many brethren": Hebrews 2:12.
- He would "lead captivity captive": Psalm 68:18; Ephesians 4:8-10.
- His bones would not be broken: Exodus 12:46; Psalm 34:20; John 19:33-36.
- His side would be pierced: Zechariah 12:10; John 19:34.
- Blood and water would flow from His body: Psalm 22:14; John 19:34.
- He would be buried with the rich: Isaiah 53:9; Matthew 27:57-60.
- He would be resurrected from the dead: Psalm 16:10; 49:15; Matthew 28:2-7; Acts 2:22-32.
- He would ascend to heaven: Psalm 24:7-10; Mark 16:19; Luke 24:51.
- He would be seated at God's right hand: Psalm 68:18; 110:1; Mark 16:19; Matthew 22:44.

Jesus predicted His death and resurrection (Matthew 20:17-19; 1 Corinthians 15) and His ascension (Luke 24:46-53). First Thessalonians 4:13-18 speaks specifically of an unknown, future time at which the dead in Christ will rise first, followed by all living believers immediately ascending into the air to be with Jesus forever.

The book of Revelation reveals that seven years of judgment will occur after the rapture, followed by Christ's return to earth with believers to defeat the enemy. At that time, Jesus will fulfill His role as the Messiah and reign from His throne in Jerusalem for 1,000 years. This is known as the millennial kingdom (Revelation 20:1-6). At the end of this time, one final rebellion will take place by Satan followed by final judgment. (For expanded studies on this subject, see the chapter on Eschatology in this manual.)

THE HUMANITY AND DEITY OF JESUS CHRIST

God the Son, Jesus Christ, combines both the divine and the human natures in one union. God the Father sent Jesus Christ to earth in human form while yet retaining His divine nature. Jesus was sent by God to earth so man could be pardoned from sin:

*For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not His Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through Him might be saved. He that believeth on Him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because He hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.
(John 3:16-18)*

The story of the earthly ministry of Jesus is recorded in the Bible in the books of Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John. These books provide a detailed record of the birth, life, death, resurrection, teachings, and ministry of Jesus Christ. As part of the plan of God, Jesus came to earth in human

form, ministered among men, died for the sins of man, was resurrected from the dead, and commissioned His followers to bear the Gospel to the nations of the world.

Philippians 2:6-11 reveals that Jesus is God and that He willingly became a man so that He could die for the sins of mankind. (This is called the "kenosis" doctrine.) This passage affirms that He is always God who became man, and He will forevermore be God and man in one person. (This doctrine is called the "hypostatic union".)

Hebrews 1:6-8 reveals that Jesus Christ is both the Son of God and God who became man. First Timothy 3:16 says that Jesus was revealed in the flesh, which indicates His existence as God before He was revealed in human form. Romans 1:3-5 confirms that Jesus is a descendant of David on the human side and the Son of God on the divine side.

There is ample evidence in the Bible that proves that Jesus was truly and thoroughly human. He had human names (i.e., Jesus, Son of David), and related to other people as a human being (John 9:16). Jesus had a body (1 John 1:1); spoke human language(s); referred to Himself as a man (John 8:40); and other people referred to Him as a man (Acts 3:22). Jesus experienced life as a human being (Luke 2:52)--including hunger (Matthew 4:2); thirst (John 19:28); weariness (John 4:6); and sorrow (John 11:35; Luke 13:34-35). He also experienced death (Hebrews 2:14-15).

The Bible confirms that while Jesus was flesh, He was also God. John says He was divine (John 1:1). Paul says he is the "very form of God" (Philippians 2:6) and our great God and Savior (Titus 2:13). He is referred to as Lord (Matthew 2:43-45), and the King of Kings (Revelation 19:16).

Jesus did the works of God, including creating (John 1:3; Colossians 1:15-20); sustaining (Hebrews 1:3-4); saving (Matthew 1:23); raising the dead (John 5:25); judging (John 5:27); sending the Holy Spirit (John 14:26; 15:26); and building the true Church (Matthew 16:18). Jesus accepts worship from men (Matthew 14:33) and angels (Hebrews 1:6), and some day in the future all men will bow before Him (Philippians 2:10, Isaiah 45:23). His miracles demonstrated His supernatural power over sickness, the elements, and death. He promises forgiveness of sins, answers to prayer, and eternal life (Mark 2:1-12; John 10:27-33; 14:13-14).

Because Jesus was both human and divine, the question has been raised as to whether His temptations by Satan were valid and whether it was even possible for Him to have sinned. The bottom line in this debate is that Jesus was both God and man. As a man in human form, He was victorious over temptation (Hebrews 4:15) and can help us in our own times of temptation (Hebrews 2:18).

ATTRIBUTES OF JESUS CHRIST

Because He is part of the Trinity of God, Jesus Christ has the same attributes as God. The Bible verifies these in the following verses. Jesus is:

Omnipotent:	All powerful.	Matthew 28:18
Omniscient:	Knows everything.	Matthew 16:30; John 21:17

Omnipresent:	Present everywhere.	Matthew 18:20; 28:20
Eternal:	Has no beginning or end.	John 1:1-2; 8:58
Unchangeable:	Remains the same.	Hebrews 13:8
Perfect:	Absolutely holy.	Colossians 1:19; 2:9-10

NAMES AND TITLES OF JESUS CHRIST

How Jesus Received His Names.

Jesus received His name in the three ways that great men receive their names on earth:

-By birth: Jesus received His name by birth, through inheritance from His Father:

God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets. Hath in these last days spoken unto us by His Son, whom He hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also He made the worlds; Who being the brightness of His glory, and the express image of His person, and upholding all things by the word of His power, when He had by Himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on High; Being made so much better than the angels, as He hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they. (Hebrews 1:1-4)

Jesus inherited a name greater than any other being in the universe. His name is greater than any king, president, or tribal leader. It is greater than the name of any angel in Heaven.

-By achievement: Jesus also received His name by achievement because He conquered all the power of the enemy:

And having spoiled principalities and powers, He made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it. (Colossians 2:15)

-By conferring: Jesus also received His name by having it conferred upon Him:

Wherefore God also hath highly exalted Him, and given Him a name which is above every name: That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth; And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father. (Philippians 2:9-11)

Names And Titles Of Jesus.

The name "Jesus" means "Savior or deliverer" (Matthew 1:21). The name "Christ" means "the anointed one" (John 3:34). Additional names and titles given Jesus Christ in the Bible include:

Advocate	1 John 2:1
Almighty	Revelation 1:8
Alpha and Omega	Revelation 21:6

Amen	Revelation 3:14
Ancient of Days	Daniel 7:9
Author/Finisher of our Faith	Hebrews 12:2
Author of Eternal Salvation	Hebrews 5:9
Begotten of God	1 John 5:18
Beloved	Ephesians 1:6
Branch	Zechariah 3:8
Bread of Life	John 6:48
Bright and Morning Star	Revelation 22:16
Captain of the Lord's Host	Joshua 5:15
Carpenter's Son	Matthew 13:55
Chief Cornerstone	1 Peter 2:6
Chief Among Ten Thousand	Song of Solomon 5:10
Christ	John 1:41
Counselor	Isaiah 9:6
Deliverer	Romans 11:26
Door	John 10:9
Elect	Isaiah 42:1
Emmanuel	Matthew 1:23
Eternal Life	1 John 5:20
Faithful and True	Revelation 19:11
Faithful Witness	Revelation 1:5
First Begotten	Hebrews 1:6
First and Last	Revelation 22:13
Glorious Lord	Isaiah 33:21
Great High Priest	Hebrews 4:14
Head of the Body	Colossians 1:18
Head over all things	Ephesians 1:22
Headstone	Psalms 118:22
Heir of all things	Hebrews 1:2
Holy One of Israel	Isaiah 41:14
Hope of Glory	Colossians 1:27
I Am	John 8:58
Image of the Invisible God	Colossians 1:15
Jesus Christ Our Lord	Romans 1:3
King of Glory	Psalms 24:7
Lamb of God	John 1:29
Light of the World	John 8:12
Lily of the Valleys	Song of Solomon 2:1
Living Bread	John 6:51
Lord God Almighty	Revelation 4:8
Lord of All	Acts 10:36
Lord Our Righteousness	Jeremiah 23:6
Love	1 John 4:8
Man of Sorrows	Isaiah 53:3

Master	Matthew 23:10
Messiah	Daniel 9:25
Most Holy	Daniel 9:24
Nazarene	Matthew 2:23
Only Wise God	1 Timothy 1:17
Our Passover	1 Corinthians 5:7
Physician	Luke 4:23
Prince of Peace	Isaiah 9:6
Propitiation	Romans 3:25
Redeemer	Isaiah 59:20
Resurrection	John 11:25
Righteous Servant	Isaiah 53:11
Rock	1 Corinthians 10:4
Root of Jesse	Isaiah 11:10
Rose of Sharon	Song of Solomon 2:1
Savior of the World	1 John 4:14
Seed of David	John 7:42
Seed of the Woman	Genesis 3:15
Shepherd	John 10:11
Son of God	Romans 1:4
Son of Man	Acts 7:56
Son of Mary	Mark 6:3
Stone	Matthew 21:42
Sun of Righteousness	Malachi 4:2
Sure Foundation	Isaiah 28:16
Teacher	John 3:2
Truth	John 14:6
Unspeakable Gift	1 Corinthians 9:15
Vine	John 15:1
Way	John 14:6
Wonderful	Isaiah 9:6
Word	John 1:14
Word of God	Revelation 19:13

THE BIRTH OF JESUS CHRIST

Jesus Christ was supernaturally conceived by the Holy Spirit and born of the virgin Mary (Matthew 1:23; Galatians 4:4) in fulfillment of Isaiah's prediction (Isaiah 7:14). John says that the Word--Jesus Christ--became flesh and that God "tabernacled" among us (John 1:1, 14).

God became a man in order to redeem His creation from sin and fulfill the Davidic covenant as the promised King (Luke 1:31-33). His purpose in coming was to reveal God to men (John 1:18); save sinners (Galatians 1:4); destroy the works of the devil (1 John 3:8); judge mankind

(Acts 17:31); bring all things in creation into submission to God (1 Corinthians 15:20-28; Ephesians 1:10-11); and intercede for believers (Romans 8:34).

THE EARLY LIFE OF JESUS CHRIST

Jesus was circumcised according to Jewish law and presented at the temple (Luke 2:21-22). He lived in Bethlehem as a baby, in Egypt for possibly a year, and was raised in Nazareth. His childhood was characterized by His growth in wisdom, stature, and favor with God and man (Luke 2:4-52). He was subject to His parents (Luke 2:49-51), and was aware of His Heavenly Father's business (Luke 2:49). His trade as a young man was a carpenter.

THE MINISTRY OF JESUS CHRIST

Jesus began His ministry with His baptism by John (Matthew 3:15 and John 1:31), followed by a time of temptation by Satan (Matthew 4). The major purposes of Christ's ministry included:

Revealing God to Mankind.

God became flesh and was revealed by Jesus Christ: *"No man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him" (John 1:18).*

Redeeming Man From Sin.

It is through the death of Jesus Christ that you are freed from the bondage of sin in which the enemy has ensnared you:

...for of whom a man is overcome, of the same is he brought in bondage... (2 Peter 2:19)

Because the creature itself also shall be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the children of God. (Romans 8:21)

Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free, and be not entangled again with the yoke of bondage. (Galatians 5:1)

Destroying The Works Of The Devil.

...For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that He might destroy the works of the Devil. (1 John 3:8)

Judging Mankind.

For as the Father hath life in himself; so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself; And hath given him authority to execute judgment also, because he is the Son of man. (John 5:26-27)

Bringing all things in creation into submission to God.

Having made known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he hath purposed in himself: That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him. (Ephesians 1:9-10)

Interceding For Believers.

In Heaven Jesus is at the right hand of God the Father interceding for believers, talking to the Father on your behalf:

...It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us. (Romans 8:34)

THE DEATH OF JESUS CHRIST

All four gospels record the death of Christ for the forgiveness of the sins of all mankind, the establishing of the New Covenant, and the defeat of Satan. The key references regarding the death of Jesus are Matthew 26-27; Mark 14-15; Luke 22-23; and John 18-19.

Old Testament prophecies foretold His betrayal and death:

- Jesus was betrayed by a friend: Psalm 41:9.
- He was betrayed for 30 pieces of silver: Zechariah 11:12-13.
- Jesus was abused: Isaiah 50:6.
- Jesus was silent before His accusers: Isaiah 53:7.
- Jesus would be crucified for our sins: Isaiah 53:4-6.
- Zechariah described the crucifixion: Zechariah 12:10.
- Jesus would be numbered with the transgressors: Isaiah 53:12.
- Jesus would be buried in a rich man's tomb: Isaiah 53:9.

New Testament writers confirmed His death: Matthew 26-27; Mark 14-15; Luke 22-23; John 18-19.

Reasons Why Jesus Died.

- To reconcile mankind to God: Romans 5:9-11; 2 Corinthians 5:18-19; Ephesians 2:14-16; Colossians 1:20-22.
- To bear our sins: Hebrews 9:28; 1 Peter 2:24.
- To take away sins: John 1:29; Hebrews 9:26; 10:4,10-12; 1 John 3:5.
- To forgive us of sins: Ephesians 1:7; Colossians 1:14; 2:13-14; 1 John 1:9.
- To give us eternal life: John 3:14-16; 10:10, 27-29; 1 John 5:6-13.

- To do the will of God: Hebrews 10:7-14.
- To save sinners: Matthew 9:13; Luke 19:10; 1 Timothy 1: 15.
- To fulfill the law: Matthew 5:17; Romans 10:4.
- To redeem those under the law: Galatians 3:13-14, 24; 4:4-5; 1 Peter 1:18-19.
- To demonstrate God's righteousness: Romans 3:24-26; 2 Corinthians 5:21.
- To manifest God's love: John 3:16; Romans 5:8; 1 John 3:16; 4:9-18.
- To bring lost mankind to God: Hebrews 2:9-10; 1 Peter 3:18.
- To destroy the devil's power: Hebrews 2:14-15.
- To fulfill the functions of a faithful high priest: Hebrews 2:17-18; 4:14-16.
- To give His life as a ransom: Matthew 28:28; 1 Timothy 2:5-6.

THE RESURRECTION OF JESUS CHRIST

After His death by crucifixion, Jesus was buried, but He did not remain in the tomb. The story of His miraculous resurrection is recorded in Matthew 28, Mark 16, Luke 24, and John 20.

Through His resurrection from the dead, Jesus gained victory over physical death. Those who become part of the Kingdom of God may experience physical death, but they will also experience resurrection from the dead as He did. Because our King is eternal, we are part of an eternal Kingdom and have eternal life.

-Old Testament writers foretold His resurrection. Examples are in Hosea 6:1-2 and Psalm 16:10.

-New Testament writers confirmed His resurrection. Complete accounts are given in Matthew 28, Mark 16, Luke 24, and John 20. Angels confirmed it: Matthew 28:5-7; Mark 16:5-7; Luke 24:4-7; and John 20:12. New Testament writers spend much time on the subject of the resurrection. A classic example is in 1 Corinthians 15 where Paul says that if Christ is not risen from the dead then He died in vain; He lied and we continue to lie; preaching and practicing our faith is useless because a dead Savior can save no one, so we are lost in our sins; our dead loved ones are gone forever; and we are to be pitied! But Paul concludes that these things are not true because Jesus Christ lives!

After His resurrection from the dead, Jesus appeared to many people, confirming the fact of His resurrection:

- His first appearance was to Mary Magdalene, on resurrection morning: Mark 16:9; John 20:10-18.
- He appeared to the women returning from the tomb: Matthew 28:9-10.
- He appeared to two disciples on the road to Emmaus: Luke 24:13-32; Mark 16:12-13.
- He appeared to Peter in Jerusalem: Luke 24:34; 1 Corinthians 15:5.
- He appeared to His disciples (Thomas absent): Luke 24:36-43; John 20:19-23.
- Jesus appeared again to His disciples with Thomas present: John 20:24-29.
- He appeared to seven disciples on the shore of the Sea of Galilee: John 21:1-24.
- Jesus was seen by 500 believers at one time: 1 Corinthians 15:5-7.

- He appeared to James: 1 Corinthians 15:7.
- He appeared on the Mount of Olives, and then ascended into Heaven: Matthew 28:18-20; Luke 24:50-53.
- He was seen by Paul on the road to Damascus: Acts 9:3-6; 1 Corinthians 15:8.
- He was seen ascending into Heaven: Acts 1:3-11.

THE ASCENSION OF JESUS CHRIST

The ascension of Jesus to Heaven is recorded in Matthew 28:16-20, Mark 16:19-20, Luke 24:50-53, and Acts 1:1-11. After Jesus appeared to many people over a period of forty days, Jesus led His disciples out to a mountain, gave them a final commission to preach the Gospel to the world, and ascended into Heaven in a cloud.

Jesus was exalted to the right hand of God (Psalm 110:1; Acts 2:34-35) and currently reigns over the universe (Ephesians 1:20-22a). He is head over all things pertaining to the Church (Ephesians 1:22-23; 1 Peter 3:22) and has sent the Holy Spirit as He promised (Acts 2:33). He presently intercedes for all true believers (Hebrews 7:25) and will remain in Heaven until time for Him to return and establish the visible Kingdom of God in final form.

THE RETURN OF JESUS CHRIST

The Bible reveals that Jesus will return to earth in what is called the rapture. Details of this return are given in 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18. Those who sleep with Jesus will come with Him; the Lord will descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God; the dead in Christ shall rise first and then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air; and so shall we ever be with the Lord. Later, Jesus will return to earth in a second coming to subdue Satan and all enemies and to establish His eternal Kingdom. (See the chapter on Eschatology in this manual for additional teaching.)

The Bible reveals that the Kingdom of Jesus will be eternal:

...of His Kingdom there shall be no end. (Luke 1:33)

Every kingdom of earth and the kingdom of Satan will be defeated by the King of Kings. In the end an announcement will be made that...

...The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of His Christ, and He shall reign for ever and ever. (Revelation 11:15)

THE THREE OFFICES OF JESUS CHRIST

Christ Is A Prophet.

In Deuteronomy 18:18 Moses predicted that God would send another prophet like him to the people of Israel. John and Peter both witness that Jesus is that prophet (John 6:14; 7:40; Acts 3:22-24). Christ functioned as a prophet through revelation from God and was, in human form, the revelation from God (John 1:18).

Christ Is Our Priest.

The prophet was God's representative to the people. The priest was the peoples' representative before God, so this means that Jesus Christ also functioned in the office of priest. Instead of offering Levitical sacrifices for sin however, Jesus offered himself as the final sacrifice--once and for all--for all the sins of all mankind. As a priest, He entered the holy of holies in Heaven and opened the way for us to access the presence of God. Romans 8:34 and Hebrews 7:25 reveal that He presently makes intercession for us.

Christ Is Our King.

Jesus Christ fulfilled the office of King. In contrast to the greatest of Israelite kings, Jesus rules over the entire world (Ephesians 1:20-23). When He returns to earth in His second coming, He will assume His rightful place as "the King of Kings" (Revelation 19:16).

SELF-TEST

1. Define Christology.

2. What are some common topics studied in Christology?

3. Why is the study of Christology important?

4. Study the section in this chapter on "The Preexistence Of Christ" and summarize what you learn.

5. What did Old Testament prophecies reveal about Jesus?

6. Using the verses provided, fill in the blanks.

- The Messiah would be born in _____: Micah 5:2; Matthew 2:1; Luke 2:4-6.
- The Messiah would be born of a _____: Genesis 3:15; Matthew 1:20; Galatians 4:4.
- The Messiah would be born of a _____: Isaiah 7:14; Matthew 1:22-23; Luke 1:26-31.
- The Messiah would come from the line of _____ Genesis 12:3; 22:18; Matthew 1:1; Romans 9:5.
- The Messiah would be a descendant of _____: Genesis 17:19; 21:12; Luke 3:34.
- The Messiah would be a descendant of _____: Numbers 24:17; Matthew 1:2.
- The Messiah would come from the tribe of _____: Genesis 49:10; Luke 3:33; Hebrews 7:14.
- The Messiah would be heir to _____ throne: 2 Samuel 7:12-13; Isaiah 9:7; Luke 1:32-33; Romans 1:3.

- The Messiah's throne will be _____ : Psalm 45:6-7; Daniel 2:44; Luke 1:33; Hebrews 1:8-12.
- He would be called _____ : Isaiah 7:14; Matthew 1:23.
- He would be _____ : Psalm 2:7; Hebrews 1:5;5:5.
- He would spend time in _____ : Hosea 11:1; Matthew 2:14-15.
- A massacre of children would happen at _____ : Jeremiah 31:15; Matthew 2:16-18.
- A messenger would prepare _____ : Isaiah 40:3-5; Malachi 3:1; Matthew 11:10-13; Luke 3:3-6.
- He would be preceded by the ministry of _____ : Malachi 4:5-6; Matthew 11:13-14.
- He would be rejected by His _____ : Psalm 69:8; Isaiah 53:3; John 1:11; 7:5.
- He would be a _____ : Deuteronomy 18:15; Acts 3:20-22.
- He would be declared to be the _____ : Psalm 2:7; Matthew 3:16-17.
- He would be called a _____ : Isaiah 11:1; Matthew 2:23.
- He would be called _____ : Psalm 2:6; Zechariah 9:9; Matthew 27:37; Mark 11:7-11.
- He would bring _____ : Isaiah 9:1-2; Matthew 4:13-16.
- He would teach using _____ : Psalm 78:2-4; Isaiah 6:9-10; Matthew 13:10-15, 34-35.
- He would heal the _____ : Isaiah 61:1-2; Luke 4:18-19.
- He would be a priest after the order of _____ : Psalm 110:4; Hebrews 5:5-6.
- He would receive praise from the _____ : Psalm 8:2; Matthew 21:16.
- He would enter Jerusalem in _____ : Zechariah 9:9; Matthew 21:4-5; John 12:14-15.
- He would be hated without _____ : Psalm 35:19.
- He would be _____ : Psalm 41:9; Zechariah 11:12-13; Luke 22:47-48; Matthew 26:14-16.
- His disciples would _____ : Zechariah 13:7; Matthew 26:31,56; Mark 14:27,50.
- The betrayal funds would be used to buy a _____ : Zechariah 11:12-13; Matthew 27:9-10.
- He would be falsely _____ : Psalm 35:11; Mark 14:57-58.
- He would be silent before _____ : Isaiah 53:7; Mark 15:4-5.
- He would be _____ : Isaiah 50:6; Matthew 26:67; Psalm 69:4; John 15:24-25.
- He would be crucified with _____ : Isaiah 53:12; Matthew 27:38; Mark 15:27-28.
- His hands and feet would be _____ : Psalm 22:16; Zechariah 12:10; John 20:25-27.
- He would be offered _____ to drink: Psalm 69:21; Matthew 27:34; John 19:28-30.
- He would be _____ : Psalm 22:7-8; Luke 23:35.
- He would bear our _____ : Psalm 69:19; Matthew 27:28.
- Soldiers would gamble for His _____ : Psalm 22:18; Luke 23:34; Matthew 27:35-36.
- He would be forsaken by _____ : Psalm 22:1; Matthew 27:46.
- He would pray for His _____ : Isaiah 53:12; Luke 23:34.
- He would be numbered with _____ : Isaiah 53:12; Luke 23:33.
- He would die by _____ : Isaiah 53:5-6;10; John 19:16.
- He would _____ : Psalm 69:3; John 19:28.
- He would be _____ : Psalm 22:17; Matthew 27:36.
- He would commend His _____ to God: Psalm 31:5; Luke 23:46.
- He would be the ultimate sacrifice for _____ : Isaiah 53:5-12; Romans 5:6-8.
- His death would secure _____ : Hebrews 2:12.
- He would "lead captivity _____ ": Psalm 68:18; Ephesians 4:8-10.
- His bones would not be _____ : Exodus 12:46; Psalm 34:20; John 19:33-36.
- His side would be _____ Zechariah 12:10; John 19:34.
- Blood and _____ would flow from His body: Psalm 22:14; John 19:34.

- He would be buried with the _____ : Isaiah 53:9; Matthew 27:57-60.
- He would be _____ from the dead: Psalm 16:10; 49:15; Matthew 28:2-7; Acts 2:22-32.
- He would ascend to _____ : Psalm 24:7-10; Mark 16:19; Luke 24:51.
- He would be seated at _____ : Psalm 68:18; 110:1; Mark 16:19; Matthew 22:44.

7. Summarize New Testament predictions regarding Jesus.

8. Using the section entitled "The Humanity And Deity Of Jesus Christ", write a summary statement about what you learn.

9. Define the following attributes of Jesus. He is:

Omnipotent: _____

Omniscient: _____

Omnipresent: _____

Eternal: _____

Unchangeable: _____

Perfect : _____

10. In what three ways did Jesus receive His name?

11. What does the name "Jesus" mean?

12. What does the name "Christ" mean?

13. Summarize what you learned about the birth of Jesus.

14. Summarize what you learned about the early life of Jesus.

15. List the ministries of Jesus discussed in this chapter.

16. What passages record the death of Jesus?

17. What do you learn about the death of Jesus in the following passages?

Psalm 41:9: _____

Zechariah 11:12-13: _____

Isaiah 50:6: _____

Isaiah 53:7: _____

Isaiah 53:4-6: _____

Zechariah 12:10: _____

Isaiah 53:12: _____

Isaiah 53:9: _____

18. What New Testament passages confirm the death of Jesus?

19. What do the following verses reveal about the reasons Jesus died?

Romans 5:9-11; 2 Corinthians 5:18-19; Ephesians 2:14-16; Colossians 1:20-22

Hebrews 9:28; 1 Peter 2:24

John 1:29; Hebrews 9:26; 10:4,10-12; 1 John 3:5

Ephesians 1:7; Colossians 1:14; 2:13-14; 1 John 1:9

John 3:14-16; 10:10, 27-29; 1 John 5:6-13

Hebrews 10:7-14

Matthew 9:13; Luke 19:10; 1 Timothy 1: 15

Matthew 5:17; Romans 10:4

Galatians 3:13-14, 24; 4:4-5; 1 Peter 1:18-19

Romans 3:24-26; 2 Corinthians 5:21

John 3:16; Romans 5:8; 1 John 3:16; 4:9-18

Hebrews 2:9-10; 1 Peter 3:18

Hebrews 2:14-15

Hebrews 2:17-18; 4:14-16

Matthew 28:28; 1 Timothy 2:5-6

20. What New Testament passages record the account of the resurrection?

21. What did Jesus achieve through His resurrection?

22. What do you learn about the resurrection of Jesus in the following passages?

Hosea 6:1-2: _____

Psalm 16:10: _____

Matthew 28, Mark 16, Luke 24, John 20: _____

Matthew 28:5-7; Mark 16:5-7; Luke 24:4-7; John 20:12: _____

1 Corinthians 15: _____

23. Using the following passages, record who Jesus appeared to after His resurrection

Mark 16:9; John 20:10-18. _____

Matthew 28:9-10. _____

Luke 24:13-32; Mark 16:12-13. _____

Luke 24:34; 1 Corinthians 15:5. _____

Luke 24:36-43; John 20:19-23. _____

John 20:24-29. _____

John 21:1-24. _____

1 Corinthians 15:5-7. _____

1 Corinthians 15:7. _____

Matthew 28:18-20; Luke 24:50-53. _____

Acts 9:3-6; 1 Corinthians 15:8. _____

Acts 1:3-11. _____

24. Where is the account of the ascension of Jesus recorded?

25. What happened to Jesus after His ascension? Where is He now? What is He doing?

26. Study 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18 and summarize what you learn about the return of Jesus Christ.

27. What are the three offices held by Jesus?

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

SUPPLEMENTAL STUDIES

1. For a detailed study of Jesus Christ, see the Harvestime *Legacy Bible Outline* studies on the Gospels.
2. Each chapter in the book of John mentions the deity of Christ. Read the following verses and summarize what you learn.

1:49 _____	11:27 _____
2:11 _____	12:32 _____
3:16 _____	13:13 _____
4:26 _____	14:11 _____
5:25 _____	15:1 _____
6:33 _____	16:28 _____
7:29 _____	17:1 _____
8:58 _____	18:11 _____
9:37 _____	19:7 _____
10:30 _____	20:28 _____
	21:14 _____

3. Study these references confirming the divine nature of Jesus Christ:

-Matthew 9:5-6; 10:32-33; 11:4-6,27; 12:6,41-42; 16:13,15,17,27; 21:42; 22:42-45; 23:10; 26:53,64; 27:11; 28:18

-Mark 2:9-11,28; 8:27,29; 12:10-11,35-37; 14:62; 15:2

-Luke 5:23-24; 6:5; 7:22-23; 9:18,20; 10:22; 11:20,31-32; 19:40; 20:17-18,41-44; 22:69-70; 23:3

-John 1:51; 3:13; 4:10,26,32; 5:17,19-23,26-27,30-32,34,36-37,39,41; 6:27,29,35,46,51,62; 7:17-18; 8:14,16-19,23,25,29,42, 50,54-56,58; 9:35,37; 10:25,30,34-38; 12:30,44-45; 13:31-32; 14:1,6,7,9-11,20; 15:23; 16:15,27-28; 17:1-3,5,8,10-11,21-24,28-29; 18:36-37; 19:11

4. Study these references confirming the human nature of Jesus Christ:

-Matthew 3:15; 8:20; 11:19; 26:10-13,38-39,42,45; 27:46

-Mark 14:7-9,26,34,36,41; 15:34

-Luke 7:34; 9:58; 22:28,42; 24:39,41

-John 4:7; 12:7-8; 19:26,28; 20:27; 21:5,12

5. Study further on the mission of Christ:

-Matthew 4:4; 5:17; 9:12-13; 10:34-36; 11:15; 15:26; 18:11-13; 21:33-40

-Mark 1:38; 2:17; 4:21-22; 7:16,27; 12:1-9

-Luke 2:49; 4:18-19,21,23-27,43; 5:31-32; 8:16,17; 11:30,33; 12:2-3,14,49,51-53; 13:32-33; 19:10; 20:9-16

-John 3:19-21; 4:13,14,34; 5:25,28-30; 6:38-40,50,55,56,58; 7:7,16; 8:12,26; 9:3-5,39; 10:1-5,7,9-18,27-29; 11:4,9,10; 12:26,27,47-50; 13:20; 18:15,16,37

6. Study further on the ministry of Christ:

-Matthew 9:15,37,38; 12:25-30; 20:28

-Mark 2:19; 3:23-27; 10:45

-Luke 5:34; 11:17-23

-John 2:4; 3:11; 4:35-38; 12:35,36

7. Study the life of Jesus Christ using this outline which combines the four New Testament records of Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John.

The Life Of Jesus Christ

I. Pre-existence of the King: John 1:1-18

II. Introduction of the King

A. Arrival of the King

1. Ancestry of the King: Matthew 1:1-17; Luke 3:23-38

2. Arrival of the King:

a. Announcement of the birth of John: Luke 1:5-25

b. Announcement to Mary of the birth of Jesus: Luke 1:26-38

c. Arrival of Mary in Judea: Luke 1:39-45

d. Praise of Mary: Luke 1:46-56

e. The birth of John: Luke 1:57-80

f. Announcement of the birth of Jesus to Joseph:
Matthew 1:18-25

g. The birth of King Jesus: Luke 2:1-7

h. Announcement of the birth of Jesus to the shepherds:
Luke 2:8-20

3. The infancy and childhood of the King

a. Circumcision of the King: Luke 2:21

- b. Presentation of the King: Luke 2:22-38
 - c. Infancy of the King:
 - (1) In Bethlehem: Matthew 2:1-12
 - (2) In Egypt: Matthew 2:13-18
 - (3) In Nazareth: Matthew 2:19-23; Luke 2:39
 - d. The childhood of the King
 - (1) Growth of the King: Luke 2:40
 - (2) The King visits Jerusalem: Luke 2:41-50
 - (3) Development of the King: Luke 2:51-52
 - B. The forerunner of the King: John the Baptist
 - 1. The message to John: Mark 1:1; Luke 3:1-2
 - 2. The message of John: Matthew 3:1-6; Mark 1:2-6; Luke 3:3-6
 - 3. The explanation by John: Matthew 3:7-10; Luke 3:7-14
 - 4. The promise by John: Matthew 3:11-12; Mark :7-8; Luke 3:15-18
- III. The approval of the King
 - A. The approval of the King
 - 1. At His baptism: Matthew 3:13-17; Mark 1:9-11; Luke 3:21-23
 - 2. By His temptation: Matthew 4:1-11; Mark 1:12-13; Luke 4:1-13
 - 3. By His forerunner, John:
 - a. Testimony of John to the leaders: John 1:19-28
 - b. Testimony of John to Jesus: John 1:29-34
 - B. Acceptance of the King
 - 1. Belief by the first disciples: John 1:35-51
 - 2. Belief through the first miracle: John 2:1-12
 - 3. Possession of the temple: John 2:13-22
 - 4. Acceptance in Judea: John 2:23-3:21
 - 5. The witness of John: John 3:22-36
 - 6. In Zebulun/Naphtali: Matthew 4:12; Mark 1:14; Luke 3:19-20; 4:14; John 4:1-4
 - 7. Acceptance in Samaria: John 4:5-42
 - 8. Acceptance in Galilee: John 4:43-45
 - C. The authority of the King
 - 1. His authority to preach: Matthew 4:17; Mark 1:15; Luke 4:14-15
 - 2. His authority over disease: John 4:46-54
 - 3. Rejection of His authority in Nazareth: Luke 4:16-30
 - 4. Residence in Capernaum: Matthew 4:13-16
 - 5. His authority over nature: Matthew 4:18-22; Mark 1:16-20; Luke 5:1-11
 - 6. His authority over demons: Mark 1:21-28; Luke 4:31-37
 - 7. Authority over sickness: Matthew 8:14-17; Mark 1:29-34; Luke 4:38-41
 - 8. Authority to preach: Matthew 4:23-25; Mark 1:35-39; Luke 4:42-44
 - 9. Authority over defilement: Matthew 8:1-4; Mark 1:40-45; Luke 5:12-16
 - 10. His authority to forgive sin: Matthew 9:1-8; Mark 2:1-12;

- Luke 5:17-26
- 11. His authority over men: Matthew 9:9-13; Mark 2:13-17; Luke 5:27-32
- 12. Authority over tradition: Matthew 9:14-17; Mark 2:18-22; Luke 5:33-39
- 13. His authority over the Sabbath:
 - a. Through the healing of the paralytic: John 5:1-47
 - b. Through argument over grain: Matthew 12:1-8; Mark 2:23-28; Luke 6:1-5
 - c. Through healing the withered hand: Matthew 12:9-14; Mark 3:1-6; Luke 6:6-11
- 14. His authority to heal: Matthew 12:15-21; Mark 3:7-12
- 15. His authority to commission: Mark 3:13-19; Luke 6:12-16
- 16. His authority to interpret the law: Matthew 5:1-7:29; Luke 6:17-42
 - a. He is the fulfillment: Matthew 5:17-20
 - b. Rejection of traditional interpretation of the law:
 - (1) Murder: Matthew 5:21-26
 - (2) Adultery: Matthew 5:27-30
 - (3) Divorce: Matthew 5:31-32
 - (4) Oaths: Matthew 5:33-37
 - (5) Retaliation: Matthew 5:38-42
 - (6) Love: Matthew 5:43-48; Luke 6:27-30; 32-36
 - c. Rejection of the practices of the Pharisees:
 - (1) Giving: Matthew 6:1-4
 - (2) Prayer: Matthew 6:5-15
 - (3) Fasting: Matthew 6:16-18
 - (4) Attitude toward wealth: Matthew 6:19-24
 - (5) Lack of faith: Matthew 6:25-34
 - (6) Judging: Matthew 7:1-6; Luke 6:37-42
 - d. Instruction to those who would enter the Kingdom:
 - (1) Prayer: Matthew 7:7-11
 - (2) Righteousness: Matthew 7:12; Luke 6:31, 43-45
 - (3) The way of access: Matthew 7:13-14
 - (4) Warning to false teachers: Matthew 7:15-23
 - (5) The two foundations: Matthew 7:24-8:1; Luke 6:46-49
- 17. Recognition of the King's authority in Capernaum: Matthew 8:5-13; Luke 7:1-10
- 18. Recognition of the King's authority in Nain: Luke 7:11-17
- 19. Witness of the twelve to the Kingdom: Matthew 9:35-11:1; Mark 6:6-13; Luke 9:1-6

IV. Controversy over the King

- A. Rejection of John: Matthew 11:2-19; Luke 7:18-35
 - 1. Death of John: Matthew 14:1-12; Mark 6:14-29; Luke 9:7-9
- B. The curse of the cities of Galilee: Matthew 11:20-30
 - 1. Condemnation for their unbelief: Matthew 11:20-24

- 2. Explanation of their unbelief: Matthew 11:25-27
- 3. An invitation to believe: Matthew 11:28-30
- C. Controversy over a sinner: Luke 7:36-50
- D. Witness to the King: Luke 8:1-3
- E. Rejection of the King by the leaders: Matthew 12:22-37; Mark 3:19-30
- F. Request by the leaders for a sign from the King: Matthew 12:38-45
- G. Rejection of the nation: Matthew 12:46-50; Mark 3:31-35; Luke 8:19-21
- H. Revelations of the rejected King:
 - 1. The Kingdom in the present: Matthew 13:1-53; Mark 4:1-34; Luke 8:4-18
 - 2. Power over nature: Matthew 8:18, 23-27; Mark 4:35-41; Luke 8:22-25
 - 3. Power over demons: Matthew 8:28-34; Mark 5:1-20; Luke 8:26-39
 - 4. Power over disease/death: Matthew 9:18-26; Mark 5:21-43; Luke 8:40-56
 - 5. Power over blindness: Matthew 9:27-34
- I. Rejection in Nazareth: Matthew 13:54-58; Mark 6:1-6
- V. Instruction of the disciples by the King
 - A. Feeding of the 5,000: Matthew 14:13-21; Mark 6:30-44; Luke 9:10-17; John 6:1-13
 - B. Rejection of offer to be King: Matthew 14:22-23; Mark 6:45-46; John 6:14-15
 - C. Instruction by example in Gennesaret: Matthew 14:34-36; Mark 6:53-56
 - D. Instruction concerning the Bread of Life: John 6:22-71
 - E. Instruction concerning defilement: Matthew 15:1-20; Mark 7:1-23; John 7:1
 - F. Instruction in:
 - 1. Tyre and Sidon: Matthew 15:21-28; Mark 7:24-30
 - 2. Decapolis: Matthew 15:29-38; Mark 7:31-8:9
 - 3. Magadan: Matthew 15:39-16:4; Mark 8:10-12
 - 4. A warning against rejection: Matthew 16:5-12; Mark 8:13-26
 - G. The confession of Peter: Matthew 16:13-20; Mark 8:27-30; Luke 9:18-21
 - H. Instruction concerning the death of the King: Matthew 16:21; 17:22-23; Mark 8:31-33; 9:30-32; Luke 9:22; 43-45
 - I. Concerning discipleship: Matthew 16:22-28; Mark 8:34-9:1; Luke 9:23-27
 - J. Revelation of the Kingdom: Matthew 17:1-8; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36
 - K. Instruction concerning Elijah: Matthew 17:9-13; Mark 9:9-13
 - L. Concerning dependence: Matthew 17:14-21; Mark 9:14-29; Luke 9:37-43
 - M. Instruction concerning sonship: Matthew 17:24-27
 - N. Humility: Matthew 18:1-5; Mark 9:33-37; Luke 9:46-48
 - O. Pride: Matthew 18:6-14; Mark 9:38-50; Luke 9:49-50
 - P. Forgiveness: Matthew 18:15-35
 - Q. Discipleship: Matthew 8:19-22; Luke 9:57-62
 - R. A challenge by the brothers of the King: John 7:2-9
 - S. The journey to Jerusalem: Luke 9:51-56; John 7:10

- VI. Opposition to the King
 - A. Conflict at the Feast of Tabernacles
 - 1. The authority of the King is questioned: John 7:11-15
 - 2. The explanation by the King: John 7:16-24
 - 3. The person of the King is questioned: John 7:25-27
 - 4. The explanation by the King: John 7:28-30
 - 5. Response: John 7:31-36
 - 6. An invitation from the King: John 7:37-52
 - B. Conflict over the law: John 7:53-8:11
 - C. Conflict over the light: John 8:12-20
 - D. Conflict over the person of the King: John 8:21-59
 - E. Conflict over the healing of a blind man: John 9:1-41
 - F. Conflict over the shepherd: John 10:1-21
 - G. Witness of the seven: Luke 10:1-24
 - H. Conflict over the question of eternal life: Luke 10:25-37
 - I. Conflict at the feast of dedication: John 10:22-39
 - J. Conflict over the healing of the dumb man: Luke 11:14-36
 - K. Conflict over ritualism: Luke 11:37-54
- VII. Instruction of the disciples by the King
 - A. An example of fellowship: Luke 10:38-42
 - B. Instruction in prayer: Luke 11:1-13
 - C. Kingdom principles concerning:
 - 1. Hypocrisy: Luke 12:1-12
 - 2. Covetousness: Luke 12:13-34
 - 3. Watchfulness: Luke 12:35-41
 - 4. Faithfulness: Luke 12:42-48
 - 5. The effect of the King's coming: Luke 12:49-53
 - 6. Signs of the times: Luke 12:54-59
 - 7. Repentance: Luke 13:1-9
 - 8. Israel's need: Luke 13:10-17
 - 9. The Kingdom program: Luke 13:18-21
 - D. Withdrawal from Judea: John 10:40-42
 - E. Instruction concerning entrance into the Kingdom: Luke 13:22-35
 - F. Instruction in a Pharisee's house: Luke 14:1-24
 - G. Instruction on Kingdom principles concerning:
 - 1. Discipleship: Luke 14:25-35
 - 2. God's attitude toward sinners: Luke 15:1-32
 - 3. Wealth: Luke 16:1-31
 - 4. Forgiveness: Luke 17:1-6
 - 5. Service: Luke 17:7-10
 - H. The raising of Lazarus:
 - 1. The miracle: John 11:1-44
 - 2. Conflict over the miracle: John 11:45-54
 - I. Instruction on Kingdom principles concerning:
 - 1. Thankfulness: Luke 17:11-19

2. The coming of the King: Luke 17:20-37
 3. Prayer: Luke 18:1-14
 4. Divorce: Matthew 19:1-12; Mark 10:1-12
 5. Entrance into the Kingdom: Matthew 19:13-15; Mark 10:17-31; Luke 18:31-34
 6. Israel: Matthew 20:29-34; Mark 10:46-53; Luke 18:35-43
 7. Personal faith: Luke 19:1-10
 8. The postponed Kingdom: Luke 19:11-28
- VIII. Presentation of the King
- A. The King arrives in Bethany: John 11:55-12:1, 9-11
 - B. Entry into Jerusalem: Matthew 21:1-11, 14-17; Mark 11:1-11; Luke 19:29-44; John 12:12-19
 - C. Authority of the King: Matthew 21:12-13, 18-19; Mark 11:12-18; Luke 19:45-48
 - D. Invitations by the King: John 12:20-50
 - E. Proof of authority: Matthew 21:20-22; Mark 11:19-25; Luke 21:37-38
 - F. The King's authority challenged:
 1. By the priests and elders: The rejection of the King: Matthew 21:23-22:14; Mark 11:27-12:12; Luke 20:1-19
 2. By the Pharisees and Herodians: Kingdom principles regarding tribute: Matthew 22:15-22; Mark 12:13-17; Luke 20:20-26
 3. By the Sadducees: Kingdom principles regarding the resurrection: Matthew 22:23-33; Mark 12:18-27; Luke 20:27-40
 4. By the Pharisees: The greatest commandment in the Kingdom: Matthew 22:34-40; Mark 12:28-34
 - G. A challenge by the King: Matthew 22:41-46; Mark 12:35-37; Luke 20:41-44
 - H. Principles of judgment: Matthew 23:1-39; Mark 12:38-40; Luke 20:45-47
 - I. Kingdom principles of giving: Mark 12:41-44; Luke 21:1-4
- IX. Preparation for the death of the King
- A. Predictions by the King
 1. The question: Matthew 24:1-3
 2. The tribulation: Matthew 24:27-30
 3. The second coming: Matthew 24:27-30
 4. The regathering of Israel: Matthew 24:31
 5. End-time parables:
 - a. The fig tree: Matthew 24:32-44
 - b. The faithful servant: Matthew 24:45-51
 - c. Ten virgins: Matthew 25:1-13
 - d. The talents: Matthew 25:14-30
 6. Judgment on the Gentiles: Matthew 25:31-46
 - B. Preparation for the death of the King:
 1. The prediction of His death: Matthew 26:1-2; Mark 14:1; Luke 22:1
 2. The plan of the rulers: Matthew 26:3-5; Mark 14:1-2; Luke 22:2
 3. Pouring of the ointment: Matthew 26:6-13; Mark 14:3-9; John 12:2-8

4. The promise to betray: Matthew 26:14-16; Mark 14:10-11; Luke 22:3-6
 5. Preparation for the Passover: Matthew 26:17-19; Mark 14:12-16; Luke 22:7-13
 6. The Passover: Matthew 26:20; Mark 14:17; Luke 22:14-16; 24-30
 7. Provision of an example: John 13:1-20
 8. Prediction of Judas' betrayal: Matthew 26:21-25; Mark 14:18-21; Luke 22:21-23; John 13:21-30
 9. Prediction of Peter's denial: Matthew 26:31-35; Mark 14:27-31; Luke 22:31-38; John 13:37-38
 10. A memorial: Matthew 26:26-30; Mark 14:22-26; Luke 22:17-20
- C. Final message of the King:
1. Introduction: John 13:31-35
 2. Problems: John 13:36-14:24
 3. Promises: John 14:25-31
 4. Instruction concerning:
 - a. Fruit bearing: John 15:1-17
 - b. Enemies of the disciples: John 15:18-16:4
 - c. The ministry of the Holy Spirit: John 16:5-15
 - d. Results of the resurrection: John 16:16-28
 - e. Conclusion: John 16:29-33
- D. Final prayers of the King
1. His prayer for Himself: John 17:1-5
 2. His prayer for His disciples: John 17:6-19
 3. His prayer for all believers: John 17:20-26
- E. The Garden Prayer: Matthew 26:36-46; Mark 14:32-42; Luke 22:39-46; John 18:1
- X. Death of the King
- A. Arrest: Matthew 26:47-56; Mark 14:43-52; Luke 22:47-53; John 18:2-12
- B. The religious trial of the King
1. Examination before Annas: John 18:12-14, 19-23
 2. Examination before Caiaphas: Matthew 26:57, 59-68; Mark 14:53, 55-56; Luke 22:54, 63-65; John 18:24
 3. Denial by Peter: Matthew 26:58, 69-75; Mark 14:54; 66-72; Luke 22:54-62; John 18:15-18, 25-27
 4. Verdict of the Sanhedrin: Matthew 27:1; Mark 15:1; Luke 22:66-71.
 5. Death of Judas: Matthew 27:3-10
- C. The civil trial of the King
1. The trial before Pilate: Matthew 27:2, 11-14; Mark 15:2-5; Luke 3:1-5; John 18:28-38
 2. Trial before Herod: Luke 23:6-12.
 3. Trial before Pilate: Matthew 27:15-26; Mark 15:6-15; Luke 23:13-25; John 18:39-19:1, 4-16
 4. Mockery of the King: Matthew 27:27-30; Mark 15:16-19; John 19:2-3

- D. The journey to Calvary: Matthew 27:31-34; Mark 15:20-23; Luke 23:26-33; John 19:16-17
- E. The crucifixion of the King
 - 1. The first three hours: Matthew 27:35-44; Mark 15:24-32; Luke 23:33-43; John 19:18-27
 - 2. Second three hours: Matthew 27:45-50; Mark 15:33-37; Luke 23:44-46; John 19:28-30
 - 3. Signs at the death of the King: Matthew 27:51-56; Mark 15:38-41; Luke 23:45,47-49
- F. Burial of the King: Matthew 27:57-60; Mark 15:42-47; Luke 23:50-56; John 19:31-42
- G. The sealing of the King's tomb: Matthew 27:62-66
- XI. Resurrection of the King
 - A. Preparation by the women: Matthew 28:1; Mark 16:1
 - B. Opening of the tomb: Matthew 28:2-4
 - C. The visit of the women: Matthew 28:5-8; Mark 16:2-8; Luke 24:1-8; John 20:1
 - D. The report to the disciples: Luke 24:9-12; John 20:2-10
 - E. Appearance of the King to Mary: Mark 16:9-11; John 20:11-18
 - F. Appearance of the King to the women: Matthew 28:9-10
 - G. The report of the guards: Matthew 28:11-15
 - H. Appearance to disciples on the Emmaus Road: Mark 16:12-13; Luke 24:13-32
 - I. Report of the two disciples: Luke 24:33-35
 - J. Appearance to the ten disciples: Mark 16:14; Luke 24:36-43; John 20:19-25
 - K. Appearance of the King to the eleven disciples: John 20:26-31
 - L. Appearance of the King to the seven disciples: John 21:1-25
- XII. Commissioned by the King: Matthew 28:16-20; Mark 16:15-18; Luke 24:44-49
- XIII. The King returns to Heaven: The ascension of Jesus: Mark 16:19-20; Luke 24:50-53

8. A historical timeline of the life of Christ:

- 6-4 BC -Birth of Jesus Christ.
- 5-4 BC -Escape to Egypt. Slaughter of children.
- 4 BC -Herod the Great dies.
- 7-8 AD -Jesus visits Jerusalem as a child.
- 12 AD -Augustus makes Tiberius co-regent.
- 14 AD -Tiberius becomes Caesar.
- 25 AD -Pilate and Caiaphas are appointed to office.
- 29 AD -Ministry of John the Baptist begins.
- 29 AD -Christ's ministry begins.
- 33 AD -Jesus dies.
- 36 AD -Pilate dethroned. Caiaphas deposed.
- 37 AD -Tiberius Caesar dies.

9. Study the miracles performed by Jesus during His early ministry.

Miracles Of Supernatural Supply:

- Water changed into wine: John 2:1-11.
- Peter's net filled with fish: Luke 5:1-11.
- Five thousand men are fed, in addition to women and children: Matthew 14:15-21; Mark 6:35-44; Luke 9:12-17; John 6:5-14.
- Four thousand men are fed, in addition to women and children: Matthew 15:32-39; Mark 8:1-10.
- A fish provides tribute money: Matthew 17:27.
- A supernatural catch of fish: John 21:6-14.

Miracles Of Raising The Dead:

- The only son of a widow: Luke 7:11-16.
- The daughter of Jairus: Mark 5:22-24, 35-43; Matthew 9:18-26; Luke 8:41,42,49-56.
- Lazarus: John 11:32-44.
- His own body: Luke 24:1-7; John 19:42-20:14; Mark 16:9-11.

Miracles Of Healing:

- The nobleman's son, of a fever: John 4:46-54.
- Peter's mother-in-law, of a fever: Mark 1:29-31; Matthew 8:14-17; Luke 4:38-39.
- A leprous man: Mark 1:40-45; Matthew 8:2-4; Luke 5:12-16.
- A man with palsy: Mark 2:3-12; Matthew 9:1-8; Luke 5:17-26.
- A man who had been afflicted thirty-eight years: John 5:1-16.
- A man with a withered hand: Mark 3:1-5; Luke 6:6-10; Matthew 12:9-13.
- The centurion's servant, of palsy: Matthew 8:5-13; Luke 7:1-10.
- A woman who had been afflicted with an issue of blood for 12 years: Mark 5:25-34; Luke 8:43-48; Matthew 9:20-22.
- Sight restored to two men: Matthew 9:27-31.
- Hearing and speech restored: Mark 7:32-37.
- Sight restored: Mark 8:22-26.
- Sight given to a man who was born blind: John 9.
- A woman who had been afflicted for 18 years: Luke 13:11-17.
- A man with dropsy: Luke 14:1-6.
- Ten leprous men: Luke 17:11-19.
- Sight restored to a beggar: Luke 18:35-43.
- Sight restored to Bartimaeus: Mark 10:46-52; Matthew 20:29-34.
- The ear of the high priest's servant: Luke 22:50-51.

Miracles Of Casting Out Devils:

- The man with an unclean spirit: Mark 1:23-26; Luke 4:33-37.
- The blind and dumb demoniac: Matthew 12:22-23; Mark 3:19-30; Luke 11:14-23.
- The two men possessed of legion: Matthew 8:28-34; Luke 8:26-39; Mark 5:1-20.
- The dumb man possessed by a devil: Matthew 9:32-35.

- The daughter of the Syrophenician woman: Mark 7:24-30; Matthew 15:22-28.
- The lunatic boy: Matthew 17:14-21; Mark 9:14-39; Luke 9:37-43.
- The devil that caused dumbness: Mark 9:14-26.

Miracles Of Judgment:

- Swine run down a steep place into the sea and are drowned: Matthew 8:30-32.
- A fig tree withers: Matthew 21:18-21; Mark 11:12-14,20-24.

Miracles Of Physical Deliverance:

- Jesus delivers Himself from His enemies: Luke 4:30.
- Peter is saved from the sea: Matthew 14:28-31; Mark 6:45-52.
- Jesus delivers the disciples from a storm: Mark 4:37-39; Luke 8:23-24 .

Miracles Over Natural Elements:

- A fig tree withers: Matthew 21:18-21; Mark 11:12-14,20-24.
- Jesus walks on water: Matthew 14:22-32; Mark 6:47-52.
- Jesus stills a storm: Mark 4:37-39; Luke 8:23-24.

Miracles Which Confirm Christ's Divinity:

- Signs at His birth: Matthew 2:1-9.
- Signs at His baptism: Matthew 3:16-17; Mark 1:9-12; Luke 3:21-23.
- Signs at His transfiguration: Matthew 17:1-14; Luke 9:28-37; Mark 9:1-14.
- Signs at the time of His death: Matthew 27:45-53.
- Signs at His resurrection: Matthew 28:2; Mark 16:4.
- Signs at His ascension: Mark 16:19; Luke 24:50-51; Acts 1:6-12.

10. Study the parables of Jesus.

Subject	Reference
The mote and beam	Luke 6:37-43
The two buildings	Matthew 7:24-27; Luke 6:47-49
Children in the marketplace	Matthew 11:16; Luke 7:32
The two debtors	Luke 7:41
The unclean spirit	Matthew 12:43-45; Luke 11:24-26
The rich man's meditation	Luke 12:16
The barren fig tree	Luke 13:6-9
The sower	Matthew 13:3-8; Mark 4:3-8; Luke 8:5-8
The tares	Matthew 13:24-30
The seed	Mark 4:26
The grain of mustard seed	Matthew 13:31,32; Mark. 4:31,32; Luke 13:19
The leaven	Matthew 13:33; Luke 13:21
The candle	Matthew 5:15; Mark 4:21; Luke 8:16; 11:33
The net	Matthew 13:47,48

The hidden treasure	Matthew 13:44
The pearl of great price	Matthew 13:45,46
The householder	Matthew 13:52
The marriage	Matthew 9:15; Mark 2:19,20; Luke 5:34,35
The patched garment	Matthew 9:16; Mark 2:21; Luke 5:36
The wine bottles	Matthew 9:17; Mark 2:22; Luke 5:37
The harvest	Matthew 9:37; Luke 10:2
The adversary	Matthew 5:25; Luke 12:58
The two insolvent debtors	Matthew 18:23-35
The good Samaritan	Luke 10:30-37
The three loaves	Luke 11:5-8
The true shepherd	John 10:1-16
The strait gate	Matthew 7:14; Luke 13:24
The guests	Luke 14:7-11
The marriage supper	Matthew 22:2-9; Luke 14:16-23
The wedding garment	Matthew 22:10-14
The tower	Luke 14:28-30
The king going to war	Luke 14:31
The lost sheep	Matthew 18:12,13; Luke 15:4-7
The lost piece of money	Luke 15:8,9
The prodigal son	Luke 15:11-32
The unjust steward	Luke 16:1-9
The importunate widow	Luke 18:2-5
The Pharisee and publican	Luke 18:10-14
The servant's office	Luke 17:7-10
The laborers in the vineyard	Matthew 20:1-16
The talents	Matthew 25:14-30; Luke 19:11-27
The two sons	Matthew 21:28
The murderous husbandmen	Matthew 21:33-43; Mark 12:1-9; Luke 20:9-16
The fig tree	Matthew 24:32; Mark 13:28; Luke 21:29-30
The watching householder	Matthew 24:43; Luke 12:39
The man on a far journey	Mark 13:34
The character of two servants	Matthew 24:45-51; Luke 12:42-46
The ten virgins	Matthew 25:1-12
The watching servants	Luke 12:36-38
The vine and its branches	John 15:1-6

11. Study the prayers of Jesus.

- At His baptism: Luke 3:21
- In a solitary place: Mark 1:35
- In the wilderness: Luke 5:16
- All night before choosing His disciples: Luke 6:12

- Before His invitation to "Come unto Me": Matthew 11:25-27
- At the feeding of the 5,000: John 6:11
- After the feeding of the 5,000: Matthew 14:23
- When He gave the Lord's prayer: Luke 11:1-4
- At Caesarea-Philippi: Luke 9:18
- Before His transfiguration: Luke 9:28-29
- For little children: Matthew 19:13
- Before the raising of Lazarus from the dead: John 11:41-42
- In the temple: John 12:27-28
- At the supper: Matthew 26:26-27
- For Peter: Luke 22:32
- For the disciples and His future followers: John 17
- In Gethsemane: Matthew 26:36,39,42,44
- On the cross: Luke 23:24
- At Emmaus: Luke 24:30
- The Lord's prayer: Matthew 6:9-13

CHAPTER THREE

PNEUMATOLOGY

Holy Spirit

DEFINITION

The word "Pneumatology" comes from the words *pneuma*--meaning wind or spirit--and *ology* meaning "the study of". In theology, Pneumatology is the study of what the Bible teaches about the Holy Spirit.

Pneumatology includes teaching on the identity of the Holy Spirit; receiving the Holy Spirit; the Baptism of the Holy Spirit; the ministry of the Holy Spirit; and gifts and fruit of the Holy Spirit.

The study of Pneumatology is of tremendous importance to Christians because the Holy Spirit plays a vital role in the life of each believer. Studying the role and work of the Holy Spirit also protects believers from inaccurate teachings.

Harvestime has a special course devoted to this subject entitled "*The Ministry Of The Holy Spirit*" to enable you to study Pneumatology in depth. Upon completion of this course you will be able to:

- Describe the personality of the Holy Spirit.
- List various names and titles of the Holy Spirit.
- Identify emblems representing the Holy Spirit.
- Describe the ministry of the Holy Spirit.
- Explain how to receive the baptism of the Holy Spirit.
- Receive the baptism of the Holy Spirit.
- List and define the gifts of the Spirit.
- Identify your spiritual gift(s).
- Identify the fruit of the Spirit.
- Identify the works of the flesh.
- Develop the fruit of the Holy Spirit in your life.

For detailed study of Pneumatology, consult "*The Ministry Of The Holy Spirit*" available free online at: <http://www.harvestime.org>

THE DEITY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

The Holy Spirit is distinguished from and yet closely related to the Father and the Son. He is equal with God as He is part of the Trinity of God.

The Holy Spirit is called "God":

But Peter said, Ananias, why hath Satan filled thine heart to lie to the Holy Ghost...thou hast not lied unto men, but unto God. (Acts 5:3-4)

He is referred to as the "Spirit of God":

And Jesus, when He was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon Him: And lo a voice from heaven saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. (Matthew 3:16-17)

The Holy Spirit is not an "it". He is referred to in the Bible with personal pronouns. Jesus spoke of the Holy Spirit as "He." Jesus said:

- He shall speak of me: John 15:26.
- I will send Him unto you: John 16:7.
- He shall glorify me: John 16:14.
- He shall not speak of Himself: John 16:13.

The relation of the Holy Spirit to the Father is revealed in the following references in the Bible. He is called:

- The Spirit of God: Genesis 1:2; Matthew 3:16.
- The Spirit of the Lord: Luke 4:18.
- The Spirit of Jehovah: Judges 3:10.
- The Spirit of the Lord God: Isaiah 61:1.
- The Spirit of the Living God: 2 Corinthians 3:3.

The relation of the Holy Spirit to Jesus is revealed in the following references in the Bible. He is called:

- The Spirit of Christ: Romans 8:9.
- The Spirit of Jesus Christ: Philippians 1:19.
- The Spirit of Jesus: Acts 16:7 .
- The Spirit of His Son: Galatians 4:6.
- The Spirit of the Lord: Acts 5:9; 8:39.

NATURE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

When we speak of the nature of the Holy Spirit, we are referring to the basic qualities which describe Him. The Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit is:

Omnipresent.

He is present everywhere:

*Whither shall I go from thy Spirit? or whither shall I flee from thy presence?
(Psalms 139:7)*

Omniscient.

He knows all things:

But God hath revealed them unto us by His Spirit; for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea the deep things of God. For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God. (1 Corinthians 2:10-11)

Omnipotent.

The Holy Spirit is all powerful:

God hath spoken once; twice have I heard this; that power belongeth unto God. (Psalms 62:11)

But ye shall receive power after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you... (Acts 1:8)

Eternal.

He is everlasting. He had no beginning and will have no ending:

How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? (Hebrews 9:14)

Holy.

The Holy Spirit is just that--Holy, which means He is righteous:

Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh; And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead. (Romans 1:3-4)

Truthful.

The Father, Son, and Spirit all bear witness to the truth:

For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. (1 John 5:7)

THE PERSONALITY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

The Holy Spirit is part of the triune nature of God, but the Holy Spirit also has an individual personality. The Bible reveals that the Holy Spirit...

Has A Mind/Intellect.

And He that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit... (Romans 8:27)

Searches Out The Human Mind.

But God hath revealed them unto us by His Spirit; for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. (1 Corinthians 2:10)

Has A Will.

But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as He will. (1 Corinthians 12:11)

The will of the Holy Spirit guides believers by denying permission for certain actions:

Now when they had gone throughout Phrygia and the region of Galatia, and were forbidden of the Holy Ghost to preach the word in Asia, After they were come to Mysia, they assayed to go into Bithynia; but the Spirit suffered them not. (Acts 16:6-7)

The will of the Holy Spirit also guides believers by granting permission:

And after he had seen the vision, immediately we endeavored to go into Macedonia, assuredly gathering that the Lord had called us for to preach the Gospel unto them. (Acts 16:10)

Speaks.

He spoke to Philip:

Then the Spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot. (Acts 8:29)

He spoke to Peter:

While Peter thought on the vision, the Spirit said unto him, Behold, three men seek thee. (Acts 10:19)

He spoke to the elders in the city of Antioch:

As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them. (Acts 13:2)

Revelation chapters 2 and 3 records several messages spoken by the Holy Spirit to seven churches in Asia.

Loves.

Now I beseech you, brethren, for the Lord Jesus Christ's sake, and for the love of the Spirit, that ye strive together with me in your prayers to God for me. (Romans 15:30)

Intercedes.

One of the personality traits of the Holy Spirit is that He is an intercessor:

Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities; for we know not what we should pray for as we ought; but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered [spoken]. (Romans 8:26)

Has emotions.

The Holy Spirit is grieved by the sinful actions of believers. We are warned:

And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption. (Ephesians 4:30)

NAMES OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

In the Bible, names are used to confirm a person's position and/or function. The names given to the Holy Spirit in the Bible reveal much about His position and function. The Holy Spirit is called:

The Spirit Of God.

Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? (1 Corinthians 3:16)

The Spirit Of Christ.

But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of His. (Romans 8:9)

The Eternal Spirit.

The Holy Spirit is everlasting, with no beginning and no end:

How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? (Hebrews 9:14)

The Spirit Of Truth.

The Holy Spirit is the source of truth which inspired God's Word, the Bible, and He reveals this truth to mankind:

Howbeit when He, the Spirit of truth, is come, He will guide you into all truth: for He shall not speak of Himself; but whatsoever He shall hear, that shall He speak; and He will show you things to come. (John 16:13)

The Spirit Of Grace.

Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace. (Hebrews 10:29)

The Spirit Of Life.

For The Law Of The Spirit Of Life In Christ Jesus Hath Made Me Free From The Law Of Sin And Death. (Romans 8:2)

The Spirit Of Glory.

If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye: for the Spirit of glory and of God resteth upon you. (1 Peter 4:14)

The Spirit Of Wisdom And Revelation.

The Holy Spirit gives wisdom to believers and reveals knowledge of Jesus Christ:

That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the Spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of Him. (Ephesians 1:17)

The Comforter.

The Holy Spirit comforts believers in times of trouble, sorrow, and loneliness:

*But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name...
(John 14:26)*

The Spirit Of Promise.

The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of promise because He is the Spirit that was sent to fulfill the promise of God:

And being assembled together with them, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which saith, ye have heard of me. For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence. (Acts 1:4-5)

The Spirit Of Holiness.

He is holy and sanctifies believers to enable their holiness:

And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the Spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead. (Romans 1:4)

The Spirit Of Faith.

When you chose to believe, you have the same spirit of faith as other believers. They may attend different local churches of different denominations, but if they are true believers they all are united with other true believers by the spirit of faith.

We having the same spirit of faith, according as it is written, I believe and therefore have I spoken; we also believe, and therefore speak. (2 Corinthians 4:13)

The Spirit Of Adoption.

It is through the Holy Spirit that we are "adopted" into the family of God as the children of God:

For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. (Romans 8:15)

EMBLEMS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

The Bible uses several emblems to represent the Holy Spirit. An emblem is a symbol representing something which has a special meaning. The following are emblems used in the Bible to represent the Holy Spirit:

The Dove.

The Holy Spirit was revealed in the form of a dove at the time of the baptism of Jesus. This emblem of the Holy Spirit indicates approval, purity, and peace:

And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon Him. (John 1:32)

It indicates approval:

And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon Him. (John 1:32)

It represents peace:

And I said, Oh that I had wings like a dove! for then would I fly away, and be at rest. (Psalms 55:6)

It symbolizes purity:

My dove, my undefiled, is but one... (Song of Solomon 6:9)

Oil.

Oil is used in the Bible as a symbol or an emblem of the Holy Spirit. Oil indicates light, healing, and anointing for service. All of these are given to a believer through the Holy Spirit.

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because He hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; He hath sent me to heal the broken-hearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised. (Luke 4:18)

How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with Him. (Acts 10:38)

Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows. (Hebrews 1:9)

Water.

Water signifies the new life and cleansing from sin that the Holy Spirit brings to the believer. Jesus spoke of the Holy Spirit being like water:

In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst let him come unto me, and drink. He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. But this spake He of the Spirit, which they that believe on Him should receive; for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified. (John 7:37-39)

For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my Spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring. (Isaiah 44:3)

A Seal.

A seal is a special mark indicating ownership. It also indicates a finished transaction. The Holy Spirit has sealed believers as belonging to God. It indicates their salvation is a finished work.

In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also, after that ye believed, were sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise. (Ephesians 1:13)

And grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption. (Ephesians 4:30)

Who hath also sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts. (2 Corinthians 1:22)

Wind.

The wind is also an emblem of the Holy Spirit. It represents the power of the Holy Spirit:

The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goeth; so is every one that is born of the Spirit. (John 3:8)

And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place. And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting. (Acts 2:1-2)

You cannot see the wind, but you can certainly see visible effects of the wind. In the natural world the wind has special functions. These functions are natural parallels of the "wind" of the Holy Spirit in the spiritual world and include the facts that:

-Wind produces life: It scatters seeds as it blows and this brings new growth. The Holy Spirit produces life through the seeds of the Word of God as they are scattered in the hearts and minds of men.

-Wind separates the wheat from the chaff: It purifies as it blows away the debris. The Holy Spirit serves as a purifying power in the life of the believer.

-Wind fans dying coals and sets them ablaze: The wind of the Holy Spirit "fans" God's people in revival and makes them flaming fires of ministry to the world.

Fire.

Fire is another emblem of the Holy Spirit. It is manifested in the following ways:

-Fire symbolizes the presence of the Lord:

And the Angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of the bush: and he looked, and behold, the bush burned with fire, and the bush was not consumed. (Exodus 3:2)

-Fire symbolizes the approval of the Lord:

And there came a fire out from before the Lord, and consumed upon the altar the burnt offering and the fat; and when the people saw, they shouted, and fell on their faces. (Leviticus 9:24)

-Fire provides protection and guidance:

And the Lord went before them by day in a pillar of a cloud, to lead them in the way; and by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light; to go by day and night. (Exodus 13:21)

-Fire purifies:

Read Isaiah 6:1-8 which relates how the Prophet Isaiah was purified by the fire of the Holy Spirit.

-Fire symbolizes the presence of the Holy Spirit:

When the Holy Spirit was first given, fire was used as a symbol of His presence:

And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them. (Acts 2:3)

-Fire represents judgment:

For our God is a consuming fire. (Hebrews 12:29)

A Pledge.

The Holy Spirit is the "first installment"--like a down payment--of future glory:

Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory. (Ephesians 1:14)

Now he which stablisheth us with you in Christ, and hath anointed us, is God; Who hath also sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts. (2 Corinthians 1:21-22)

THE MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

Creation.

The Holy Spirit was active in creation of the earth:

And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. (Genesis 1:2)

Thou sendest forth thy spirit, they are created: and thou renewest the face of the earth. (Psalms 104:30)

Scriptures.

The Holy Spirit's ministry involves the written Word of God which is also called the Holy Scriptures or the Holy Bible. The Holy Spirit ministered by:

-Revelation:

He spoke to human writers the message of God:

For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost. (2 Peter 1:21)

-Inspiration:

He guided these writers so the message would be accurate:

All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness; That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works. (2 Timothy 3:16-17)

-Illumination:

He enlightens human hearts to understand the message of the Gospel:

But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, He shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you. (John 14:26)

Israel.

The nation of Israel was chosen by God as a people through whom He could reveal Himself and fulfill His master plan in the world. It was through Israel that the Messiah came to save men from sin. From Jerusalem, the capital of Israel, the Gospel message spread throughout the world. The ministry of the Holy Spirit to Israel is evident from the very beginning of the nation. The Holy Spirit:

-Came upon the leaders of Israel. There are too many examples of this to list all of the incidents as part of this manual. As you study the Old Testament, you will note many references to the Spirit of the Lord coming upon leaders, priests, prophets, kings, and His people.

-Came upon Israel's places of worship.

Then a cloud covered the tent of the congregation, and the glory of the Lord filled the tabernacle. (Exodus 40:34)

And it came to pass, when the priests were come out of the holy place, that the cloud filled the house of the Lord. (1 Kings 8:10)

-Guided them to the promised land.

Thou gavest also thy good spirit to instruct them, and withheldest not thy manna from their mouth, and gavest them water for their thirst. Yea, forty years didst thou sustain them in the wilderness so that they lacked nothing... (Nehemiah 9:20)

-Will come upon Israel during the tribulation. The tribulation is a future time of great trouble on the earth during which God will place a special mark of protection on Israel.

And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living God: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea, saying, Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads. And I heard the number of them which were sealed: and there were sealed an hundred and forty and four thousand of all the tribes of the children of Israel. (Revelation 7:2-4)

-Will come upon Israel during the Millennium. The Millennium is a thousand years of peace during which Jesus will reign on the earth:

And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for Him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for Him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn. (Zechariah 12:10)

Satan.

The Holy Spirit is the restraining spiritual force that limits the power of Satan:

...When the enemy shall come in like a flood, the Spirit of the Lord shall lift up a standard against him. (Isaiah 59:19)

When the Holy Spirit is removed from the world, then the spirit of the Antichrist, an evil world ruler, will seize control for a period of time.

For the mystery of iniquity doeth already work: only he who now letteth will let, until he be taken out of the way. And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume, with the spirit of His mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of His coming; Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders. And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved, And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion that they should believe a lie; That they all might be damned who believed not the truth but had pleasure in unrighteousness. (2 Thessalonians 2:7-12)

Jesus.

The ministry of the Holy Spirit was evident in the life of Jesus. Jesus was:

-Conceived By The Spirit:

And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee; therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God. (Luke 1:35)

Now the birth of Jesus Christ was on this wise, when as his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost... Behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost. (Matthew 1:18,20)

-Anointed By The Spirit:

And Jesus, when He was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon Him... (Matthew 3:16)

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because He hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor, He hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised... (Luke 4:18)

How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with Him. (Acts 10:38)

Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows. (Hebrews 1:9)

-Sealed By The Spirit:

Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for that meat which endureth unto everlasting life, which the Son of man shall give unto you: for Him hath God the Father sealed. (John 6:27)

-Led By The Spirit:

Then was Jesus led up of the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil. (Matthew 4:1)

-Empowered By The Spirit:

But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you. (Matthew 12:28)

-Filled By The Spirit:

And Jesus, being full of the Holy Ghost returned from Jordan, and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness. (Luke 4:1)

For He whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God; for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto Him. (John 3:34)

-Troubled In The Spirit:

When Jesus therefore saw her weeping, and the Jews also weeping which came with her, He groaned in the spirit and was troubled. (John 11:33)

-Rejoiced In The Spirit:

In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight. (Luke 10:21)

-Offered Through The Spirit:

How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? (Hebrews 9:14)

-Raised By The Spirit:

For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that He might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit. (1 Peter 3:18)

And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the Spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead. (Romans 1:4)

-Commanded His Disciples Through The Spirit:

Until the day in which He was taken up, after that He through the Holy Ghost had given commandments unto the apostles whom he had chosen. (Acts 1:2)

Sinners.

The Holy Spirit's ministry concerning sinners was described by Jesus:

Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away; for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send Him unto you. And when He is come, He will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment: Of sin, because they believe not on me; Of righteousness because I go to my Father and ye see me no more; Of judgment because the prince of this world is judged. (John 16:7-11)

The Church.

The Holy Spirit serves several purposes in the Church. He...

-Formed It:

Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellow citizens with the saints, and of the household of God; And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ Himself being the chief corner stone; In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto a holy temple in the Lord; In whom ye also are builded together for a habitation of God through the Spirit. (Ephesians 2:19-22)

-Inspires Its Worship:

For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the Spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh. (Philippians 3:3)

-Directs Its Missionary Activities:

Then the Spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot. (Acts 8:29)

Now when they had gone throughout Phrygia and the region of Galatia, and were forbidden of the Holy Ghost to preach the word in Asia, After they were come to Mysia, they assayed to go into Bithynia; but the Spirit suffered them not. And after he had seen the vision, immediately we endeavored to go into Macedonia, assuredly gathering that the Lord had called us for to preach the gospel unto them. (Acts 16:6,7,10)

As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them. So they, being sent forth by the Holy Ghost, departed unto Seleucia; and from thence they sailed to Cyprus. (Acts 13:2,4)

-Selects Its Ministers:

Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which He hath purchased with His own blood. (Acts 20:28)

-Anoints Its Preachers:

And my speech and my preaching was not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power. (1 Corinthians 2:4)

-Guides Its Decisions:

For it seemed good to the Holy Ghost and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things. (Acts 15:28)

-Baptizes It With Power:

And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place. And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting. And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as a fire, and it sat upon each of them. And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance. (Acts 2:1-4)

Believers.

The Holy Spirit serves an important purpose in the lives of believers. He...

-Convicts:

It is the Holy Spirit that convicts of sin to draw men and women to Jesus. You could not become a believer without this ministry of the Spirit:

And when He is come, He will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment: Of sin, because they believe not on me; Of righteousness, because I go to My Father and ye see me no more; Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged. (John 16:8-11)

-Regenerates:

The Holy Spirit changes your life when you become a believer:

Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to His mercy He saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost. (Titus 3:5)

Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God. Nicodemus saith unto Him, How can a man be born when he is old? can he enter the second time into his mother's womb, and be born? Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. Marvel not that I said unto thee, Ye must be born again. (John 3:3-7)

-Sanctifies:

The Holy Spirit takes the person who has been changed by the new-birth experience and enables them to live righteously:

But we are bound to give thanks alway to God for you, brethren, beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth...(2 Thessalonians 2:13)

-Baptizes:

And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost and began to speak in other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance. (Acts 2:4)

-Dwells Within:

The purpose of this indwelling is to strengthen the new nature received through salvation:

What! Know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own? (1 Corinthians 6:19)

Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? (1 Corinthians 3:16)

Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature; old things are passed away; behold all things are become new. (2 Corinthians 5:17)

This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfill the lust of the flesh. For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; and these are contrary the one to the other; so that ye cannot do the things that ye would. But if ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law. (Galatians 5:16-18)

-Strengthens:

That He would grant you, according to the riches of His glory, to be strengthened with might by His Spirit in the inner man. (Ephesians 3:16)

-Unites:

The Holy Spirit makes a believer one in spirit with God and other believers. This is called the "unity of the Spirit":

But he that is joined unto the Lord is one spirit. (1 Corinthians 6:17)

For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many are one body: so also is Christ. For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit. (1 Corinthians 12:12-13)

-Intercedes:

Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. (Romans 8:26)

But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost. (Jude 20)

Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints. (Ephesians 6:18)

-Guides:

Howbeit when He, the Spirit of truth, is come, He will guide you into all truth; for He shall not speak of Himself; but whatsoever He shall hear, that shall He speak; and He will show you things to come. (John 16:13)

For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. (Romans 8:14)

-Demonstrates Love:

The Holy Spirit shows the love of Christ to and through the believer:

And hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us. (Romans 5:5)

-Conforms To The Image Of Christ:

But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord. (2 Corinthians 3:18)

-Reveals Truth:

But God hath revealed them unto us by His Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. (1 Corinthians 2:10)

-Teaches:

But the anointing which ye have received of Him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in Him. (1 John 2:27)

-Assures Of Salvation:

*The Spirit itself beareth witness, with our spirit, that we are the children of God.
(Romans 8:16)*

And he that keepeth His commandments dwelleth in Him, and He in him. And hereby we know that He abideth in us, by the Spirit which He hath given us. (1 John 3:24)

-Gives Liberty:

For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. (Romans 8:2)

Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty. (2 Corinthians 3:17)

-Comforts:

...and walking in the fear of the Lord, and in the comfort of the Holy Ghost... (Acts 9:31)

Even the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth Him not, neither knoweth Him; but ye know Him; for He dwelleth with you, and shall be in you...But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, He shall teach you all things and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you. (John 14:17,26)

-Quickens:

But if the Spirit of Him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, He that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken [empower, give new life, resurrect] your mortal bodies by His Spirit that dwelleth in you. (Romans 8:11)

-Speaks:

But when they shall lead you, and deliver you up, take no thought beforehand what ye shall speak, neither do ye premeditate; but whatsoever shall be given you in that hour, that speak ye: for it is not ye that speak, but the Holy Ghost. (Mark 13:11)

-Demonstrates God's Power:

And my speech and my preaching was not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power; That your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men but in the power of God. (1 Corinthians 2:4-5)

-Inspires Worship:

*God is a Spirit: and they that worship Him must worship Him in spirit and in truth.
(John 4:24)*

-Empowers For Witnessing:

The power to witness is the true evidence that one has been baptized in the Holy Spirit.

But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you; and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost parts of the earth. (Acts 1:8)

-Gives Spiritual Gifts And Fruit:

The Holy Spirit gives spiritual gifts to believers. These are specific abilities to enable them to function effectively as part of the Church. The Holy Spirit also develops spiritual fruit in a believer's life. Spiritual fruit refers to the nature of the Holy Spirit in the life of a believer.

BAPTISM OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

There are seven passages in the New Testament where the word "baptize" is used in relation to the Holy Spirit. Four of these are the words of John the Baptist recorded in the Gospels:

I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance: but he that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: He shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and with fire. (Matthew 3:11)

*I indeed have baptized you with water: but He shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost.
(Mark 1:8)*

John answered, saying unto them all, I indeed baptize you with water; but one mightier than I cometh, the latchet of whose shoes I am not worthy to unloose; He shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost and with fire. (Luke 3:16)

And I knew Him not: but He that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending and remaining on Him, the same is He which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost. (John 1:33)

Jesus also spoke of the baptism of the Holy Ghost:

For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence. (Acts 1:5)

When Peter spoke of events which took place in the home of Cornelius he quoted the words of Jesus:

Then remembered I the word of the Lord, how that He said, John indeed baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost. (Acts 11:16)

Paul also used the word "baptize" in relation to the Holy Spirit:

For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit. (1 Corinthians 12:13)

The phrase "to baptize into" the Holy Spirit is the same wording used to describe Christian baptism in water. In both cases baptism is an outward confirmation of an inward spiritual experience.

The baptism of the Holy Spirit was given during a Jewish observance called the feast of Pentecost. For this reason, baptism in the Holy Spirit is often called a "Pentecostal experience" and the time of the giving of the Spirit called "the day of Pentecost."

The Holy Spirit came down from Heaven and completely immersed (baptized) believers assembled in the upper room of a house in Jerusalem. They had been waiting or "tarrying" for His coming as they had been commanded to do by Jesus. Peter said this experience was the fulfillment of God's promise given through the Prophet Joel: "In the last days...I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh."

And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my Spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions; And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit. (Joel 2:28-29)

Male and female, young and old were to be included in this outpouring of the Holy Spirit. They were to prophesy, dream dreams, and see visions. God's Spirit was to empower both servants (men) and handmaidens (women). On the day the Holy Spirit was given, Peter said:

Repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call. (Acts 2:38-39)

Peter's words revealed that the promise of the Holy Spirit was:

- A national promise: "Unto you" (the Jewish people).
- A generational promise: "Your children."
- A universal promise: "To all that are afar off."

There are three places in the New Testament where we are told what happened when people were baptized in the Holy Spirit:

The Day Of Pentecost.

Acts 2:2-4 is the record of what happened on the day of Pentecost:

And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting. And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them. And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance. (Acts 2:2-4)

At The House Of Cornelius.

Acts 10:44-46 is the record of what happened when Peter preached the Gospel to a man named Cornelius and his family:

While Peter yet spoke these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word. And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost. For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God... (Acts 10:44-46)

The Converts At Ephesus.

Acts 19:6 describes what happened to the first group of converts at Ephesus:

And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues and prophesied. (Acts 19:6)

As we compare these passages there is one physical sign which is common to all three: Those who received the baptism of the Holy Spirit spoke with other tongues. Other supernatural signs of the Holy Spirit are mentioned, but none of these were evident on all three occasions.

On the day of Pentecost, the sound of a rushing wind was heard and visible tongues of fire were seen. These were not recorded on the other two occasions. At Ephesus the new converts prophesied. This is not mentioned as having occurred on the day of Pentecost or in the house of Cornelius.

The one outward sign which the apostles observed in the experience of Cornelius and his household was that they spoke with tongues. This physical sign was proof to the disciples that this family had been baptized in the Holy Spirit. From these Biblical records we conclude that the physical sign of speaking in tongues through the power of the Holy Spirit confirms that a person has been baptized in the Holy Spirit.

The sign of "tongues" can be languages known to man. This is what happened on the day of Pentecost:

...And they were all amazed and marvelled, saying one to another, Behold are not all these which speak Galilaeans? And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born? (Acts 2:7-8)

Tongues can also be a language not known to man. This is called an unknown tongue:

For he that speaketh in an unknown tongue speaketh not unto men, but unto God: for no man understandeth him; howbeit in the spirit he speaketh mysteries. (1 Corinthians 14:2)

THE GIFTS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

The word "spiritual" means "characterized or controlled by the Holy Spirit." A spiritual gift is a supernatural ability given by the Holy Spirit to a believer to enable them to minister as part of the Body of Christ.

The leadership gifts of the Holy Spirit include apostles, prophets, evangelists, pastors, and teachers. Speaking gifts of the Holy Spirit include prophecy, teaching, exhortation, the word of wisdom, and the word of knowledge. Serving gifts of the Holy Spirit include serving, helps, leadership, administration, giving, showing mercy, discerning spirits, faith, and hospitality. Sign gifts of the Holy Spirit include tongues, interpretation, miracles, and healing. For additional studies on the gifts, see the Harvestime course on "*Ministry Of The Holy Spirit*".

The purposes of the gifts of the Holy Spirit are listed in Ephesians 4:12-15:

For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ; Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ: That we henceforth be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine by the slight of men, and cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive; But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into Him in all things, which is the head, even Christ. (Ephesians 4:12-15)

According to this passage, the purposes of the Holy Spirit are to:

- Perfect the saints.
- Promote the work of the ministry.
- Edify Christ and the Church.

The objectives or goals of spiritual gifts are that we will:

- Become united in the faith.
- Develop our knowledge of Christ.
- Develop in perfection, with Christ as our model.
- Become stable, not deceived by false doctrines.

-Mature spiritually in Christ.

Each believer has at least one spiritual gift:

As every man hath received the gift, even so minister the same one to another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God. (1 Peter 4:10)

But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as He will. (1 Corinthians 12:7,11)

The main passages identifying spiritual gifts are:

-Romans 12:1-8 -1 Corinthians 12:1-31
-Ephesians 4:1-16 -1 Peter 4:7-11

Remember that these gifts are special abilities from God to minister in different ways. While there may be some evidences of these in your life, it does not necessarily mean you have a certain gift. For example, all believers are to give to the work of the Lord with tithes and offerings, but the gift of giving is an unusual generosity prompted by the Spirit of God. All believers have a measure of faith according to the Word of God. But the gift of faith is a special ability to believe beyond that of the ordinary Christian.

Some people claim that all of the spiritual gifts listed in the Bible are not for the Church today. They believe some gifts like prophecy, tongues, miracles, etc., were only for the early Church. They often use 1 Corinthians 13:10 to support their opinions:

But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away. (1 Corinthians 13:10)

These people say that once the Church was established, there was no longer a need for some of these more miraculous gifts. What they fail to note is that knowledge is also mentioned in the same passage as being "vanished" or done away with:

...whether there be prophecies, they shall fail; whether there be tongues, they shall cease; whether there be knowledge, it shall vanish away. (1 Corinthians 13:8)

If we use this verse to say tongues, interpretation, and prophecy are no longer needed, then we must also say knowledge is no longer needed. This passage actually refers to a future time when the perfect Kingdom of God is established on earth. Since what is perfect will come at that time, we will have no need of any of the spiritual gifts then, because...

...He will dwell with them, and they shall be His people, and God Himself shall be with them, and be their God. (Revelation 21:3)

We will have no need of messages through prophecy, tongues, or interpretation, for we will be dwelling with the God who inspires such messages. We will have no need of words of wisdom or knowledge, for we will be living with the source of knowledge. We will not need discerning of spirits, for...

...there shall no wise enter into it any thing that defileth...but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life. (Revelation 21:27)

There will be no need for gifts of healing for...

...In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life...for the healing of the nations. (Revelation 22:2)

Also recall the purposes and objectives of spiritual gifts given in Ephesians 4:12-15. The purposes are for perfecting the saints, promoting the work of the ministry, and edifying Christ and the Church. The purposes for which the gifts were given still remain. The saints still need to be perfected, the Gospel still needs to be extended to the ends of the earth, and Christ and the Church need to be edified. The objectives--that we will be united in the faith; develop in our knowledge of Christ; develop in perfection with Christ as our model; become stable, not deceived by false doctrines; and mature spiritually in Christ--still need to be fulfilled.

God would not give spiritual gifts for these specific purposes and objectives and then remove them without these things being accomplished.

- Are all believers united in the faith?
- Has everyone developed fully in the knowledge of Christ?
- Are we all perfected?
- Are our Church members stable and not being deceived by false doctrines?
- Are all our Church members spiritually mature?

The answer to all of these questions is "no." For this reason we know all of the spiritual gifts are still for today. God gave spiritual gifts to accomplish certain purposes in the Church. He will not withdraw any of these gifts without these purposes being accomplished. The Bible also says that the "gifts and callings of God are without repentance" (Romans 11:29). This means God will not change His mind and take back a spiritual gift or calling He has given.

THE FRUIT OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

The fruit of the Holy Spirit refers to the development of the nature of the Spirit revealed in the life of the believer, spiritual qualities which should be evident in the lives of all Christians. The gifts of the Holy Spirit are for power. The fruit of the Holy Spirit is for the development of character in the life of a believer. Here are the qualities or "spiritual fruit" that should be developing in the lives of true believers: "*But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law*" (Galatians 5:22-23). For further study on this subject see the Harvestime International Institute course entitled "*Ministry Of The Holy Spirit*".

SELF-TEST

1. Define Pneumatology.

2. What does the study of Pneumatology include?

3. Why is the study of Pneumatology important?

4. Using the section on "The Deity Of The Holy Spirit" in this chapter, summarize what you learned regarding this subject.

5. What do the following terms reveal regarding the nature of the Holy Spirit?

-Omnipresent: _____

-Omniscient: _____

-Omnipotent: _____

-Eternal: _____

-Holy: _____

-Truthful: _____

6. Using the section in this chapter on "The Personality Of The Holy Spirit", list seven things you learned about the personality of the Holy Spirit.

7. Using the section in this chapter on "The Names Of The Holy Spirit", list 13 names that reflect His position and function.

<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>

8. Using the section in this chapter on "The Emblems Of The Holy Spirit", list seven emblems that represent Him and explain the meaning of each.

<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>

9. Summarize the ministry of the Holy Spirit in relation to:

-Creation: _____

-The Scriptures: _____

-Israel: _____

-Satan: _____

-Jesus: _____

-Sinners: _____

-The Church: _____

-Believers: _____

10. Using the section entitled "Baptism Of the Holy Spirit", list seven New Testament passages that refer to the baptism of the Holy Spirit.

11. Summarize what you learn about the baptism of the Holy Spirit in Joel 2:28-29.

12. To whom is the promise of Acts 2:38-39 given?

13. List three passages in the New Testament which describe what happened when people were baptized in the Holy Spirit. What manifestation was common to all three?

14. What are two manifestations of the sign of tongues?

15. What is meant by a "spiritual gift"?

16. List the gifts of the Holy Spirit.

17. According to Ephesians 4:12-15, what are three purposes of the Holy Spirit?

18. According to Ephesians 4:12-15, what are five objectives of the Holy Spirit?

19. Give two references that confirm that each believer has at least one spiritual gift.

20. List the main passages that identify the spiritual gifts.

21. How can you refute the claims of some people that all of the spiritual gifts listed in the Bible are not for the Church today?

22. What is meant by "the fruit of the Holy Spirit"? How do these qualities compare with spiritual gifts?

23. Using Galatians 5:22-23, list the fruit of the Holy Spirit.

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

SUPPLEMENTAL STUDIES

1. Study further on the Holy Spirit's involvement in the revelation and inspiration of scripture:
 - 2 Timothy 3:16, 17
 - 2 Peter 1:19-21
 - 1 Corinthians 2:9-13; 14:37
 - John 14:26; 16:14
 - Ephesians 2:20
 - 1 Timothy 5:18
 - 2 Peter 3:16
 - Romans 16:26

2. In Old Testament times, the Holy Spirit did not permanently indwell believers, but came upon men and women of God for a period of time for specific purposes. Study these examples:
 - Joseph: Genesis 41:38
 - Joshua: Numbers 27:18
 - Daniel: Daniel 4:8; 5:11-14; 6:3
 - Samson: Judges 14:6
 - David: 1 Samuel 16:13
 - Bezalel: Exodus 31:3; 35:31

3. In New Testament times, the Holy Spirit came to indwell believers permanently. To be "filled with the Holy Spirit" or "indwelt" by Him means to be controlled by the Spirit. Study the following verses:
 - Luke 4:28; 5:26; 6:11
 - Acts chapter 2; 3:10; 5:17; 6:3,5; 7:55; 11:24; 13:45, 52; 19:29
 - Romans 15:13, 14
 - 2 Corinthians 7:4
 - Philippians 1:11
 - Ephesians 5:18

4. Use the Harvestime International Network course entitled "*Ministry Of The Holy Spirit*" to study the following subjects in depth and expand your knowledge of Pneumatology.
 - The personality of the Holy Spirit.
 - Names and titles of the Holy Spirit.
 - Emblems representing the Holy Spirit.
 - The ministry of the Holy Spirit.
 - The baptism of the Holy Spirit.
 - The gifts of the Spirit.
 - The fruit of the Spirit

CHAPTER FOUR

ANGELOLOGY

Angels

DEFINITION

The term “angelology” comes from two Greek terms, namely, *aggelos* meaning “messenger” or “angel” and *logos* meaning “word, matter, or thing.” In Christian theology the term refers to the study of the biblical doctrine of angels. Angelology studies the origin, organization, classification, attributes, and ministry of angels. Some theologians combine the study of Satan's evil angels under this heading, but we will consider this in a separate chapter entitled "Demonology".

THE ORIGIN OF ANGELS

Angels are ministering spirits sent by God to do His will:

Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation. (Hebrews 1:14)

The title "angel" means messenger. Angels were created by God:

Praise ye Him, all His angels: praise ye Him, all His hosts...Let them praise the name of the Lord: For He commanded and they were created. (Psalms 148:2 and 5)

For by Him were all things created, that are in Heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by Him and for Him. (Colossians 1:16)

All of the angels were righteous and holy when they were first created. They worshiped and served the one true God. Later, some angels rebelled against God and lost their position as angels. They became part of a force of evil called "demons".

THE ORGANIZATION OF ANGELS

There are two kinds of angels: Good angels--the angels of God which are the subject of this chapter--and evil angels (demons) which will be discussed under the subject of Demonology. God has organized His angels in a special order. The Bible does not reveal the details of that order, but it does indicate such organization:

For by Him were all things created, that are in Heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by Him and for Him. (Colossians 1:16; See also Ephesians 3:10)

The organization of the invisible world is described here in terms of thrones, dominions, principalities, and powers. We are not given details of this structure. We know that they sometimes function in large companies (Psalms 68:17; Matthew 26:53) and that they are innumerable (Hebrews 12:22).

THE CLASSIFICATION OF ANGELS

There are literally multitudes of angels (Luke 2:13-15) who are apparently classified according to the duties they perform. These are the main classifications of angels:

Messengers.

This class of angels is most likely the largest in number. These are the angels composing the innumerable group, visualized by Daniel (Daniel 7:10), who carry out the will of God in Heaven and earth. They interpret God's will, protect, provide guidance, bring answers to prayer, announce, warn, instruct, bring judgment, encourage, sustain, deliver, and intercede on behalf of believers.

Elect Angels.

Only one reference is made to elect angels in 1 Timothy 5:21. There is no further information given about this group.

Cherubim.

This classification of angels is first mentioned in Genesis 3:24 in relation to the expulsion of Adam and Eve from Eden. They are also mentioned as part of the ark of the covenant (Exodus 25:18-22). Ezekiel mentions these beings and describes them as having four appearances: The face of a lion, the face of an ox, the face of a man, and the face of an eagle (Ezekiel 1:3-28; 10:22). This symbolism of the cherubim suggests they are the living creatures surrounding the throne of God in Revelation 4:6. They appear to be the highest order of angels, the guardians of God.

The two cherubim placed on the mercy seat of the ark are called the "cherubim of glory" (Hebrews 9:5). They were placed one at each end of the mercy-seat, with wings stretched upward, and their faces "toward each other and toward the mercy-seat." They were anointed with holy oil, as was the ark and the sacred furniture. It was here that God manifested Himself on earth in Old Testament times and His visible glory rested. (1 Samuel 4:4; Psalm 80:1; Ezekiel 1:26, 28).

Seraphim.

Seraphim, whose name means "fiery ones", are mentioned in Isaiah 6:2,3,6,7. They are represented as standing above the King as He sat upon his throne, ready to minister unto Him. Their form appears to have been human, with the addition of wings.

Living Creatures.

This group of angels are mentioned in Ezekiel 1-10 and Revelation 4:6,8; 5:6. This title presents these angels as manifesting the fullness of divine life and their chief ministry appears to be worship of God. They are distinguished from the other angels (Revelation 15:7); they join the elders in a "new song" (Revelation 5:8, 9); they warn of divine justice (Isaiah 6:3-5); and deliver the commission to those who execute it (Ezekiel 10:2, 7). They are also with the elders and the hundred and forty-four thousand who sing the new song (Revelation 14:3), and with the Church in the overthrow of her enemies (Revelation 19:4).

Individual Angels.

There are two angels mentioned by name in the Bible:

-Michael: Michael, the archangel, is mentioned in Daniel 10:13,21; 12:1; Jude 9; and Revelation 12:7. He is the only angel who is called an archangel. He is represented as having charge over an army of angels in Revelation 12:7 and is said to be the prince of the people of Israel in Daniel 10:13,21; 12:1.

-Gabriel: The meaning of his name is "mighty one." He is mentioned in Daniel 8:16; 9:21; and in Luke 1:19,26. He is always used to deliver an important message from God. It is Gabriel who interpreted the vision for Daniel in 8:16; 9:21 and who announced the birth of John and Jesus Luke 1:19,26.

-The angel of Jehovah: This is believed to be appearances of Christ in the Old Testament.

Special Groups Of Angels.

The Bible also mentions special groups of angels which include:

-Angels of the seven churches:	Revelation 1:20
-Four angels who control the winds:	Revelation 1:7
-Seven angels who stand before God:	Revelation 8:2
-Seven angels who administer the seven last plagues:	Revelation 15:1,7
-Twenty-four elders--who may be angelic beings:	Revelation 4 and 5

THE ATTRIBUTES OF ANGELS

Attributes--or traits--of God's angels include the following. They...

- Are spirits: Hebrews 1:14
- Are sexless: Luke 20:34-36
- Do not reproduce: Mark 12:25
- Are immortal: Matthew 22:28-30
- Have both visible and invisible forms: Numbers 22:22-35
- Appear with the likeness of human form when necessary: Genesis 19:1-22; 18:2,4,8
- Have emotions: Luke 15:1-10
- Have appetites: Genesis 18:8
- Are glorified beings: Luke 9:26
- Are intelligent: 2 Samuel 14:20
- Are meek: Jude 9
- Are powerful: Psalms 103:20; 2 Peter 2:11
- Have no need to rest: Revelation 4:8
- Travel at an unrecorded speed: Revelation 8:13; 9:1
- Speak different languages: 1 Corinthians 13:1
- Are innumerable: Luke 2:13; Hebrews 12:22; Psalms 68:17; Mark 1:13; Revelation 5:19
- Are immortal: Luke 20:34-36
- Do not marry or have children: Luke 20:34-36
- Are obedient: Psalms 103:20
- Are holy: Revelation 14:10; Mark 8:38
- Are reverent: Their main activity is the worship of God. Nehemiah 9:6; Philippians 2:9-11; Hebrews 1:6
- Are stronger than man, powerful but not omnipotent (all powerful): Psalm 103:20 and 2 Peter 2:11
- Can be visible or invisible: Numbers 22:22; Hebrews 13:2
- Are able to ascend and descend to and from Heaven: Genesis 28:12; John 1:51

THE MINISTRY OF ANGELS

Angels were active throughout the Old and New Testaments--see the Supplemental Studies section of this chapter.

Angels have access to the presence of God in Heaven:

...In Heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in Heaven. (Matthew 18:10)

They are also active on earth. This is documented by the varied ministries and many appearances of angels recorded in the Bible.

Angels minister in many ways in both Heaven and earth, including special ministries to believers. Study the following biblical references.

The ministry of angels in Heaven includes:

- Worship: Revelation 4:8; 5:11-12; Isaiah 6:3; Psalms 103:20; 148:1-2
- Standing ready to do God's will: Psalms 103:20-21
- Ministering to the godly who have died in Christ Jesus: Jude 9; Luke 16:22
- Representing children in a special way: Matthew 18:10
- Rejoicing over those who accept the Gospel: Luke 15:10

The ministry of angels on earth includes:

- Ruling nations: Daniel 10
- Ministering to believers in times of testing: Matthew 4:11
- Strengthening believers: Luke 22:43
- Interpreting God's will for men: Zechariah 1:9; Daniel 7:16
- Guarding believers: Matthew 18:10
- Guiding believers: Acts 8:26
- Bringing judgment on individuals and nations: Acts 12:23; Genesis 19:3; 2 Samuel 24:16; Revelation 16:1
- Bringing answers to prayer: Daniel 9:21-22
- Announcing: Luke 1:11-20; Matthew 1:20, 21
- Warning: Matthew 2:13
- Instructing: Matthew 28:2-6; Acts 10:3-6; Daniel 4:13-17
- Encouraging: Acts 27:23; Genesis 28:12
- Revealing: Acts 7:53; Galatians 3:19; Hebrews 2:2; Daniel 9:21-27; Revelation 1:1
- Sustaining: Matthew 4:11; Luke 22:43
- Preserving: Genesis 16:7; 24:7; Exodus 23:20; Revelation 7:1
- Protecting: Psalms 91:11; 34:5-7
- Delivering: Numbers 20:16; Psalms 34:7; Isaiah 63:9; Daniel 3:28; 6:22; Genesis 19:15; 48:16; Matthew 26:53; Acts 12:1-19
- Destroying: Acts 12:20-23
- Interceding: Zechariah 1:12; Revelation 8:3,4
- Executing warfare in behalf of believers: Exodus 33:2
- Being active in evangelism: Acts 10:1-3,5; 8:25
- Empowering our worship: Psalm 148:2
- Escorting us in death: Luke 16:22; 1 Corinthians 15:26

The future activities of angels will include:

- Participating in the return of Jesus: 1 Thessalonians 4:16
- Gathering the elect: Matthew 24:31
- Warning and preaching during the tribulation: Revelation 14:6-9
- Separating the wicked from the righteous: Matthew 13:39 and 49

- Executing judgments: Revelation 8,9 and 16
- Binding Satan: Revelation 20

IMPORTANT WARNINGS

Angels are holy beings with important ministries on behalf of believers, but the Bible gives some important warnings concerning them:

Do Not Worship Angels.

You are not to worship angels:

Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he hath not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind. (Colossians 2:18)

And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which shewed me these things. Then saith he unto me, See thou do it not: for I am thy fellow servant and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: Worship God. (Revelation 22:8-9)

Reject Angels Preaching "Another Gospel".

Some people have claimed to see angels who gave them a "new revelation" contrary to God's written Word. Entire religious movements have been founded on such false revelations. The Bible warns:

But though we, or an angel from Heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. (Galatians 1:8)

You are not to listen to a man, an angel, or any other being that would guide you contrary to God's Word. The Bible warns:

And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light. (2 Corinthians 11:14)

Do Not Provoke The Angels.

Read the story of Balaam in Numbers 22, a prophet who was acting in disobedience to God. You will note that he was opposed by an angel of the Lord. When you are disobedient to God, the angels may actually hinder you. You will be fighting a battle, but it will not be warfare against the enemy. Be careful that you do not provoke the angels of God (Ecclesiastes 5:1-6).

SELF-TEST

1. Define Angelology.

2. What topics does the subject of Angelology include?

3. What does the word "angel" mean?

4. How did angels originate?

5. To whom are angels sent to minister?

6. What are the two kinds of angels?

7. How are the good angels organized?

8. Summarize what you learned regarding the following classifications of angels.

Messengers.

Elect angels.

Cherubim.

Seraphim.

Living creatures.

9. What two angels are mentioned by name in the Bible and what duties did they perform?

10. What special groups of angels are mentioned in the following passages?

Revelation 1:20

Revelation 1:7

Revelation 8:2

Revelation 15:1,7

Revelation 4 and 5

11. Look up the following passages and record what they teach regarding the attributes of God's angels.

Hebrews 1:14

Luke 20:34-36

Mark 12:25

Matthew 22:28-30

Numbers 22:22-35

Genesis 19:1-22; 18:2,4,8

Luke 15:1-10

Genesis 18:8

Luke 9:26

2 Samuel 14:20

Jude 9

Psalms 103:20; 2 Peter 2:11

Revelation 4:8

Revelation 8:13; 9:1

1 Corinthians 13:1

Luke 2:13; Hebrews 12:22; Psalms 68:17;
Mark 1:13; Revelation 5:19

Luke 20:34-36

Luke 20:34-36

Psalms 103:20

Revelation 14:10; Mark 8:38

Nehemiah 9:6; Philippians 2:9-11;
Hebrews 1:6

Psalms 103:20; 2 Peter 2:11.

Numbers 22:22; Hebrews 13:2

Genesis 28:12; John 1:51

12. Using the following verses, summarize the ministry of angels in Heaven.

_____ Revelation 4:8; 5:11-12; Isaiah 6:3;
Psalms 103:20; 148:1-2

_____ Psalms 103:20-21

_____ Jude 9; Luke 16:22

_____ Matthew 18:10

_____ Luke 15:10

13. Use the following verses to summarize the ministry of angels on earth.

_____ Daniel 10

_____ Matthew 4:11

_____ Luke 22:43

_____ Zechariah 1:9; Daniel 7:16

_____ Matthew 18:10

_____ Acts 8:26.

_____ Acts 12:23; Genesis 19:3; 2 Samuel 24:16;
Revelation 16:1

_____ Daniel 9:21-22

_____ Luke 1:11-20; Matthew 1:20, 21

_____ Matthew 2:13

_____ Matthew 28:2-6; Acts 10:3-6; Daniel 4:13-17

_____ Acts 27:23; Genesis 28:12

_____ Acts 7:53; Galatians 3:19; Hebrews 2:2; Daniel
9:21-27; Revelation 1:1

_____ Matthew 4:11; Luke 22:43

_____ Genesis 16:7; 24:7; Exodus 23:20; Revelation 7:1
 _____ Psalms 91:11
 _____ Numbers 20:16; Psalms 34:7; Isaiah 63:9; Daniel
 3:28; 6:22; Genesis 48:16; Matthew 26:53; Acts
 12:1-19
 _____ Acts 12:20-23
 _____ Zechariah 1:12; Revelation 8:3,4
 _____ Exodus 33:2
 _____ Acts 10:1-3,5; 8:25
 _____ Psalm 148:2
 _____ Luke 16:22; 1 Corinthians 15:26

14. Using the following verses summarize the future activities of angels.

_____ 1 Thessalonians 4:16
 _____ Matthew 24:31
 _____ Revelation 14:6-9
 _____ Matthew 13:39 and 49
 _____ Revelation 8, 9 and 16
 _____ Revelation 20

15. What three important warnings are given in this chapter regarding angels?

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

SUPPLEMENTAL STUDIES

1. Use the following outline to study further about angels:

Angels In The Old Testament:

Rescued Hagar: Genesis 16:7-12
Announced the birth of Isaac: Genesis 18:1-15
Announced the destruction of Sodom: Genesis 18:16-33
Destroyed Sodom and rescued Lot: Genesis 19:1-29
Prevented the slaying of Isaac: Genesis 22:11-2
Guarded Jacob: Genesis 28:12; 31:11; 32:1; 48:16
Commissioned Moses: Exodus 3:2
Led Israel: Exodus 14:19; 23:20-23; 32:34
Arranged the marriage of Isaac and Rebecca: Genesis 24:7
Gave the law: Acts 7:38; Galatians 3:19; Hebrews 2:2
Rebuked Balaam: Numbers 22:31-35
Appeared to Joshua: Joshua 5:13-15
Rebuked Israel for idolatry: Judges 2:1-5
Commissioned Gideon: Judges 6:11-40
Announced the birth of Samson: Judges 13
Punished Israel: 2 Samuel 24:16-17
Rescued Elijah: 1 Kings 19:5-8
Surrounded Elisha: 2 Kings 6:14-17
Saved Daniel from lions: Daniel 6:22
Conquered the Assyrian army: 2 Kings 19:35 and Isaiah 37:36
Camped around God's people: Psalms 34:7; 91:11
Mentioned frequently as messengers to the prophets from God: Daniel 9

Angels In The Life Of Jesus:

Announced the birth of His forerunner, John: Luke 1:11-17
Named John: Luke 1:13
Announced the birth of Jesus to Mary: Luke 1:26-37
Announced the birth of Jesus to Joseph: Matthew 1:20-21
Named Jesus: Matthew 1:21
Announced the birth of Jesus to the shepherds: Luke 2:8-15
Sang: Luke 2:13-14
Directed the flight of Christ's family to Egypt: Matthew 2:13,20
Ministered to Jesus at His temptation: Matthew 4:11
Came to Jesus in Gethsemane: Luke 22:43
Rolled away the stone at His tomb: Matthew 28:2
Announced His resurrection: Matthew 28:5-7
Presented Him to Mary Magdalene: John 20:11-14

Ascended on Him: John 1:51

Were available so Christ could have called twelve legions of them: Matthew 26:53

Jesus spoke about angels saying that they...

-Will come with Him when He returns: Matthew 25:31; 16:27; Mark 8:38; Luke 9:26

-Will be the reapers: Matthew 13:39

-Will gather the elect: Matthew 24:31

-Will divide the wicked from the righteous: Matthew 13:41,49

-Carried the beggar to Abraham: Luke 16:22

-Rejoice over sinners who repent: Luke 15:10

-Represent little children: Matthew 18:10

-Will confess His people before angels: Luke 12:8

-Have no sex and cannot die: Luke 20:35-36

Angels In The Book Of Acts:

Opened prison doors: 5:19

Directed Philip to the Ethiopian: 8:26

Directed Cornelius to send for Peter: Chapter 10

Delivered Peter from prison: 12:7-19

Struck Herod dead: 12:23

Stood by Paul during the storm: 27:23

Also mentioned in: 6:15; 7:30,35,38,53; 11:13; 23:8-9

Angels In The Epistles:

Elect angels are identified: 1 Timothy 5:21

Angels are innumerable: Hebrews 12:22

Angels minister to heirs of salvation: Hebrews 1:13-14

Angels will return with Jesus: 2 Thessalonians 1:7

We are warned not to worship angels: Colossians 2:18

Angels In The Book Of Revelation:

Dictated the book to John: 1:1-2; 22:16

Presided over the seven churches: Chapters 1-2

Were interested in the sealed book: 5:2

Sang praise to the Lamb: 5:11-12

Were given special power on earth: 7:1-4

Sealed the elect: 7:1-4

Fell down before God: 7:11

Were used to answer prayers of the saints: 8:3-5

Sounded the seven trumpets: 8:6

Ruled the locust army: 9:11
Loosed 200,000,000 horsemen: 9:15-16
Announced the end of time: 10:1,2,6
Fought with the dragon and his angels: 12:7
Proclaimed the Gospel to the nations: 14:6
Proclaimed the fall of Babylon: 14:8; 18:2
Pronounced doom of the beast's followers: 14:9-10
Announced the harvest of the earth: 14:15-18
Had the last seven plagues: 15:1
Announced judgment on Babylon: 17:1,5
Participated in destruction of Babylon: 18:21
Opened the abyss: 20:1
Showed John the New Jerusalem: 21:9
Forbid John to worship them: 22:8-9

2. The term "the Angel of the Lord" appears 50 times and the term "the Angel of God" appears five times. The terms are assumed to be references to the appearance of Jesus in Old Testament times. The Angel of the Lord appeared to:

-Hagar: Genesis 16:7-13; 21:17-20
-Abraham: Genesis 22:11, 15-18
-Moses: Exodus 3:1-6; 14:19
-Balaam: Numbers 22:20-35
-Israel: Judges 2:1-5
-Gideon: Judges 6:11-24
-Manoah and his wife: Judges 13:2-3, 6-9, 15-2

CHAPTER FIVE

DEMONOLOGY

Satan And Demons

DEFINITION

In Christian theology, demonology is the study of Satan and demons. It includes the study of such topics as the origin of Satan, his former position, his fall, results of his sin, his present location, his activities and attributes, and his names. It also includes the original position and fall of demons, their attributes, their names, the organization of demonic forces, their activities, and the final destination of Satan and demons.

THE ORIGIN OF SATAN

Satan was originally created by God:

All things were made by Him; and without Him was not any thing made that was made. (John 1:3)

For by Him were all things created, that are in Heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers; all things were created by Him and for Him. (Colossians 1:16)

God does not create evil. Satan was perfect when he was originally created by God, but was given a free will to choose good or evil:

Thou was perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created till iniquity was found in thee. (Ezekiel 28:15)

THE FORMER POSITION OF SATAN

The Bible describes the original position of Satan in Ezekiel 28:12-17. Read this passage in your Bible before proceeding with this lesson. When Satan was originally created, he was an angel of God. He was one of the Cherubim class of angels and was holy, wise, beautiful, and perfect. He was the leader among the cherubs and is called a "guardian" or "covering" cherub. His name was originally Lucifer which means "light bearer" (Isaiah 14:12). He was given a position on God's holy mountain and apparently led in worship (Ezekiel 28:13).

What a brilliant, beautiful picture of Satan in his original position is given in the Word of God. He was decked with precious stones set in gold (Ezekiel 28:13; Exodus 28:15-21). He is described as a gem of precious stones, but a gem has no light of its own. It is not beautiful in a dark room. Its beauty is in its ability to reflect light from without. When God created Lucifer,

He made him with a capacity to reflect the glory of God to a greater degree than any other created being. God was the light that made Lucifer radiate beauty.

THE FALL OF SATAN

Satan did not retain this glorious position, however. The Bible describes his rebellion and fall:

How art thou fallen from Heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning. How art thou cut down to the ground which didst waken the nations. For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into Heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation in the sides of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High. Yet thou shalt be brought down to Hell, to the sides of the pit. (Isaiah 14:12-15)

Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hadst corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness. (Ezekiel 28:17)

Satan's fall from his angelic position occurred because of pride and rebellion demonstrated in five wrong attitudes. Satan said:

-I WILL ascend unto Heaven: He wanted to occupy the abode of God--Heaven--desiring equal recognition.

-I WILL exalt my throne above the angels of God: He not only desired to occupy God's abode, but he also coveted His rule over the angelic hosts.

-I WILL sit also upon the mountain of the congregation: According to Isaiah 2:2 and Psalms 48:2, this is the center of God's earthly rule. Satan desired to rule the earth as well as the angels.

-I WILL ascend above the heights of the clouds: The clouds speak of the glory of God. Satan wanted God's glory for himself. (The following verses document clouds in relation to the glory of God: Exodus 13:21; 40:28-34; Job 37:15-16; Matthew 26:64; Revelation 14:14-16.)

-I WILL be like the Most High: God has many names by which He is known. Why did Satan choose this particular name? He selected this title because it reflects God as "possessor of Heaven and earth" and Satan coveted that position.

RESULTS OF SATAN'S SIN

Here are the terrible results of Satan's sin:

Banishment From Heaven.

Because of his rebellion, Satan was cast out of Heaven by God:

*...I will cast thee as profane out of the mountain of God...I will cast thee to the ground...
(Ezekiel 28:16-17)*

Corruption Of Character.

Lucifer, once created for God's glory, became Satan with a character that opposed all God is and does.

Perversion Of Power.

Satan's power was once used for God's glory, but now it is disruptive and destructive. According to Isaiah 14 he weakens the nations (verse 12), causes the earth and governments to tremble (verse 16), and prevents those taken as his prisoner from finding any relief (verse 17).

Destined To The Lake Of Fire.

Satan is destined to end up in the lake of fire (Isaiah 14:15).

Defection Of Other Angels Of God.

When Satan fell from Heaven he did not fall alone. He took with him a portion of the angelic host of Heaven who participated in his rebellion against God. This group of angels are now part of an evil force of demons.

Entrance Of Sin In The Universe.

When Satan rebelled, sin entered the universe. As a result, there were two actions God could have taken:

-He could have struck down Satan and killed him, but if God had brought down the first enemy in this way, there would always have been the possibility of another rebellion. The history of Heaven would have been marked with similar disasters.

-The other action was the one which the Bible indicates that God took. The claims of Satan to superior power should have their complete trial on earth in the span of eternity we call time.

When God created the first man and woman, the trial on earth began. The story of the temptation of Adam and Eve by Satan and their fall into sin is recorded in Genesis chapter three. The battle is still underway on earth. That is what spiritual warfare is all about. Satan is still seeking power, position, and worship. But he is already a defeated foe. Jesus overcame the power of Satan through His death and resurrection, and Satan's final destiny is already confirmed in the Bible.

SATAN'S PRESENT LOCATION

Satan is present in the world in spirit form:

And the Lord said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then Satan answered the Lord, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it. (Job 1:7)

Be sober, be vigilant, because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour. (1 Peter 5:8)

Although Satan is present in the world, he is not omnipresent, which means he cannot be every place in the world at one time as God can. This is why he employs a host of demons to accomplish his plans.

SATAN'S ACTIVITIES

Satan has access to the presence of God and operates on the earth, including the "air" or region above the earth:

Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the Lord, and Satan came also among them. And the Lord said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then Satan answered the Lord, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it. (Job 1:6-7)

Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience. (Ephesians 2:2)

Satan is a murderer (John 8:44); an adversary (1 Peter 5:8); a liar (John 8:44); and accuser of believers (Revelation 12:10). He tempts believers (Acts 5:3); plants counterfeits among believers (Matthew 13:38-39); tries to defeat believers through demonic activity (Ephesians 6:12); and incites persecution against believers (Revelation 2:10). We may summarize the activities of Satan by noting that they are always directed against God, His plan, and His people. He will attack you in the areas of your worship of God, the Word of God, your Christian walk, and your work for God.

Satan works in the lives of unbelievers by blinding their minds to the truth of God's Word (1 Corinthians 4:4); snatching the word out of their hearts (Luke 8:12); using them to oppose the work of God (Revelation 2:13); and deceiving them (Revelation 20:3).

THE ATTRIBUTES OF SATAN

Unlike God, Satan is not omniscient (knowing all things). If Satan could foresee the future he never would have allowed Jesus to die on the cross. He would have known that the death of

Jesus would overthrow his power and provide a way of escape from the bondage of sin for all mankind.

Satan is not omnipotent (all powerful). Jesus said the power of God within you is greater than the power of Satan. For those who believe in Jesus, Satan is already a defeated foe (John 12:31). He is strong only to those who yield to him. His power is limited by the power of God (Job 1:10-12) and he is only able to overcome a believer as they yield control to him.

Satan is a spirit, but he also has attributes of a real personality. The Bible teaches that he is:

Intelligent And Subtle.

But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtility, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ. (2 Corinthians 11:3)

Emotional.

And the dragon was wroth with the woman... (Revelation 12:17)

Self-willed.

And that they may recover themselves out of the snare of the devil, who are taken captive by him at his will. (2 Timothy 2:26)

Powerful.

...Prince of the power of the air... (Ephesians 2:2)

Deceitful.

Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. (Ephesians 6:11)

Fierce And Cruel.

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour. (1 Peter 5:8)

Deceptive.

And no marvel: For Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light. (2 Corinthians 11:14)

THE NAMES OF SATAN

The Bible gives many names for Satan which reveal more about his nature and activities. Satan was originally called the "anointed cherub" and "Lucifer" before his rebellion. Other names for Satan are:

Abaddon (Hebrew word for a destroying angel):	Revelation 9:11
Accuser of the Brethren:	Revelation 12:10
Adversary:	1 Peter 5:8
Angel of bottomless pit:	Revelation 9:11
Angel of light:	2 Corinthians 11:4
Apollyon (Greek word for destroyer):	Revelation 9:11
Beelzebub:	Matthew 12:24; Luke 11:15; Mark 3:22
Belial:	2 Corinthians 6:15
Deceiver:	Revelation 12:9; 20:3
Destroyer:	Revelation 9:11; 1 Corinthians 10:10
Devil (means slanderer):	1 Peter 5:8; Matthew 4:1
Dragon:	Revelation 12:3
Enemy:	Matthew 13:39
Evil One:	1 John 5:19
God of this world:	2 Corinthians 4:4
King of Tyrus:	Ezekiel 28:12-15
Liar, father of lies:	John 8:44
Murderer:	John 8:44
Prince of the devils:	Matthew 12:24
Prince of this world:	John 12:31; 14:30; 16:11
Prince of the power of the air:	Ephesians 2:2
Satan (means adversary):	John 13:27
Serpent:	Revelation 12:9; 2 Corinthians 1:3
Tempter:	Matthew 4:3; 1 Thessalonians 3:5
Roaring Lion:	1 Peter 5:8
Ruler of darkness:	Ephesians 6:12
Spirit that works in the children of disobedience:	Ephesians 2:2

You can recognize the power of Satan from his attributes and names. Because he is a deceptive, powerful enemy the Bible warns:

Be sober, be vigilant, because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour. (1 Peter 5:8)

Neither give place to the devil. (Ephesians 4:27)

THE ORIGINAL POSITION AND FALL OF DEMONS

God originally created all of the angels, some of which later became demons:

All things were made by Him; and without Him was not any thing made that was made. (John 1:3)

For by Him were all things created, that are in Heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers; all things were created by Him and for Him. (Colossians 1:16)

Demons were originally like the other angels of God with the same attributes and positions as the good angels. When Satan rebelled against God, a portion of the angels participated in his rebellion, so God cast them out of Heaven, along with Satan. They were no longer good spiritual beings (angels), but were evil spiritual beings (demons):

And there was war in Heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon (Satan); and the dragon fought and his angels. And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in Heaven. And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him. (Revelation 12:7-9)

If demons are not "fallen" angels, then we have no other Biblical explanation for their existence. Satan cannot create his own forces, because all things were created by God. There are two groups of these fallen angels. One group is actively opposing God and His people on earth. Another is confined in chains:

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to Hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness to be reserved unto judgment...(2 Peter 2:4)

And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day. (Jude 6)

The leader of both the confined demons and active demons is Satan, who is called the "prince" of devils (Matthew 12:24).

THE ATTRIBUTES OF DEMONS

In their original sinless condition, demons had the same attributes as the good angels previously discussed in this chapter. In their present evil state these demons:

-Are spirits:	Matthew 8:16; Luke 10:17, 20
-Can appear visibly:	Genesis 3:1; Zechariah 3:1; Matthew 4:9-10
-Can speak:	Mark 5:9, 12; Luke 8:28; Matthew 8:31

-Believe:	James 2:19
-Exercise their wills:	Luke 11:24; 8:32
-Demonstrate intelligence:	Mark 1:24
-Have emotions:	Luke 8:28; James 2:19
-Have recognition:	Acts 19:15
-Have supernatural strength:	Acts 19:16; Mark 5:3
-Have supernatural presence:	Daniel 9:21-23
-Are eternal:	Matthew 25:41
-Have their own doctrine:	1 Timothy 4:1-3
-Are evil:	Matthew 10:1; Mark 1:27; 3:11; 1 Timothy 4:1-3
-Know their destiny:	Matthew 8:29
-Recognize Christ:	Mark 1:24

THE NAMES OF DEMONS

Demons are called evil spirits six times and unclean spirits 23 times in the New Testament. They are also called devils (Mark 1:32) and the devil's angels (Matthew 25:41).

THE ORGANIZATION OF DEMONIC FORCES

Let us review how God organized His angelic host...

For by Him were all things created, that are in Heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: All things were created by Him, and for Him. (Colossians 1:16)

Satan is an imitator, not an originator. He has organized his demons in a structure similar to that of God's forces:

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. (Ephesians 6:12)

Satan has organized his forces into:

Principalities: Satan has apparently divided the world into principalities. A principality is the territory or jurisdiction of a prince. Satan has placed a prince over each principality. The prince of the power of Persia is mentioned in Daniel 10. This is how Satan works on a national level influencing governments and nations.

Powers and rulers of darkness of this world: These two categories of demons are at work in the social, political, and cultural systems of the world.

Spiritual wickedness in high places: High places in the Old Testament were where worship occurred. This is how Satan works in the religious structures of the world.

These organized groups vary in size. For example, Mary Magdalene had seven demons in her prior to her deliverance. Luke 8:30 mentions a "legion" of demons. A legion in the Roman army which ruled at the time of Jesus referred to 6,100 foot soldiers and 726 horsemen!

These organized forces of demons...

Are united: In the case of the demonized man recorded in Luke 8:30 the demons were united in their purpose, which in this example was possession of the man. The same is true in Matthew 12:45 and in the case of Mary Magdalene who had seven demons (Luke 16:9). Jesus spoke of the unity of demonic powers when He said:

And if Satan cast out Satan, he is divided against himself; how shall then his kingdom stand? (Matthew 12:26)

Have different degrees of wickedness: This is illustrated by the demon who said he would return with other evil spirits:

When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none. Then he saith, I will return into my house from whence I came out; and when he is come, he findeth it empty, swept, and garnished. Then goeth he and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself and they enter in and dwell there: And the last state of that man is worse than the first... (Matthew 12:43-45)

Can change their functions: The demon in 1 Kings 22:21-23 declared he would be a lying spirit. This indicates he was not one previously for he said "I will be...".

Are of different kinds: The Bible teaches that man has a body, soul, and spirit. There are three major kinds of demons that attack the body, soul, and spirit of man:

-Evil or unclean spirits: They are responsible for immoral acts, unclean thoughts, oppression, possession, depression, and other strategies of Satan. They afflict the mind and the soulish nature of man (Matthew 10:1; 12:43; Mark 1:23-26).

-Spirits of infirmity: These spirits afflict the physical body (Luke 13:11).

-Seducing spirits: Seducing spirits afflict the mind, soul, and spirit of man, influencing him to believe false doctrines as indicated in 1 Timothy 4:1. These spirits seduce people to believe a lie and be damned to eternal punishment. They are spirits of false doctrine, cults, false Christs, and false teachers.

THE ACTIVITIES OF DEMONS

Throughout the Bible, demons are shown as being active on earth. Since Satan is not omnipresent (present everywhere), he uses demons to do his will and accomplish his purposes throughout the world. Demons constitute the "powers of the air" (Ephesians 2:2) and the "powers of darkness" (Colossians 1:13) and are all under the control of Satan.

Demons follow orders given by their prince, Satan. We can summarize the activities of demons by noting that they are always directed against God, His plan, and His people. Demons extend Satan's power by promoting deception and wickedness. They affect individuals, governments, nations, and the world system. They promote rebellion and slander both God and men. They promote idolatry, false doctrines, and blind men and women to the truth of the Gospel.

These demons attack unbelievers driving them to commit terrible evil acts, to murder, injure, commit suicide, etc. They affect the mind with emotional problems and the body with physical infirmities. They demonize people by residing within a person, exerting direct control of the person's mind and actions. Demon possession is characterized by unclean spirits (Mark 5:2); fits of rage (Mark 5:4); unusual physical strength (Mark 5:3); resistance to spiritual things (Mark 5:7); and alteration of voice and personality (Mark 5:9).

Demons attack believers by temptation, deception, depression, and oppression. They try to keep you in bondage to habits and fear. They accuse and slander you, create division among the people of God, and attack your physical body. Demons are used by Satan to attack the Word of God, your worship of God, your walk with God, and your work for God.

Unbelievers are defenseless against the attacks of demonic powers, but believers have powerful spiritual strategies for dealing with these mighty spiritual forces of evil. Believers can protect themselves from demonic activity, be delivered when affected by demons, and have the authority to bring deliverance to others through Jesus Christ. For detailed studies on spiritual warfare, demonic activities, and deliverance see the Harvestime International Network course entitled "*Spiritual Strategies: A Manual Of Spiritual Warfare*" available at: <http://www.harvestime.org>

THE FINAL DESTINATION OF SATAN AND DEMONS

Hell is prepared for the Devil and his angels. It will be their final destiny:

Then shall He (Jesus) say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels. (Matthew 25:41)

And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever. (Revelation 20:10)

When Jesus confronted two men possessed by demons, their response was:

...What have we to do with thee, Jesus, thou Son of God? art thou come hither to torment us before the time? (Matthew 8:29)

The demons in the possessed men knew their final destiny was a place of eternal torment and that there was a set time for their banishment there.

SELF-TEST

1. Define demonology.

2. Who created Satan?

3. Was Satan originally created as good or evil?

4. What passage reveals Satan's former position when he was first created?
Describe his former state.

5. Identify two passages that describe the fall of Satan.

_____ and _____

6. What caused Satan's fall?

7. List the five "I Will" statements made by Satan.

8. What were Satan's desires as reflected in these statements?

9. List six results of Satan's sin discussed in this lesson.

10. What is Satan's present location? Is Satan omnipresent?

11. Write a summary statement regarding Satan's present activities.

12. Summarize the attributes of Satan discussed in this chapter.

13. What warnings are given regarding Satan in 1 Peter 5:8 and Ephesians 4:27?

14. Who originally created the angels that became demons?

15. Describe the original state of demons.

16. What caused these angels to be cast out of heaven and become evil spirits?

17. What are the two groups of fallen angels?

_____ and _____

18. Who is the leader of the demonic angels?

19. Summarize the attributes of demons which were listed in this chapter.

20. What are some other names for demons?

21. Summarize the following levels of Satan's organizational structure of demons.

-Principalities. _____

-Powers and rulers of darkness of this world. _____

-Spiritual wickedness in high places. _____

22. Summarize what you learned about demons in regards to the following facts:

-They are united. _____

-They have different degrees of wickedness. _____

-They can change their functions. _____

-They are of different kinds. _____

23. Summarize what you learned about the activities of demons as discussed in this chapter.

24. What is the final destination for Satan and his angels?

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

SUPPLEMENTAL STUDIES

1. Harvestime International Network provides two in-depth studies for dealing with Satan and demons: "*Spiritual Strategies: A Manual For Spiritual Warfare*" and "*Battle For The Body*" available free at: <http://www.harvestime.org>
2. Review the names of Satan listed in this chapter. They will increase your understanding of his nature, activities, and schemes.

CHAPTER SIX

BIBLIOLOGY

The Bible

DEFINITION

The term Bibliology comes from the Greek word *biblos* meaning “the books”. It refers to the study of the Bible as the written Word of the one true and living God. The word "Scripture" is also used to refer to God's Word. This word comes from a Latin word which means "writing." Topics studied in Bibliology include revelation, inspiration, inerrancy, canonicity, interpretation, illumination, application, and structure of the Word of God. The unity and diversity of the Word is studied, as are the purposes, versions, translations, and paraphrases.

REVELATION OF THE WORD

The word "revelation" means to unveil or uncover. Revelation is the process whereby God makes Himself known to mankind through scripture, Jesus Christ, miracles, visions, dreams, creation, etc.

In addition to the written Word of God, creation itself reveals God:

Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the Word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear. (Hebrews 11:3)

God created the heavens by His Word: "*By the Word of the Lord were the heavens made*" (*Psalms 33:6*). God also sustains, or continues to uphold the world and all things by the power of His Word:

Who being the brightness of His glory, and the express image of His person, and upholding all things by the Word of His power, when He had by Himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high. (Hebrews 1:3)

The Word of God is also revealed through conscience (Romans 2:14-15) and providence--God's sovereign dealings in history (Genesis 50:20; 1 Samuel 2:6-10).

INSPIRATION OF THE WORD

Inspiration is the process by which God used human authors to record His Words through Spirit-inspired writing. Verbal inspiration of the Word refers to every word being inspired. Plenary inspiration refers to the entire Bible being inspired, not just those parts that speak to issues of faith and practice (2 Timothy 3:16; 2 Peter 1:20-21).

God is the source of biblical inspiration. Some of the writers wrote down exactly what God said as He commanded them:

Take thee a roll of a book, and write therein all the words that I have spoken unto thee against Israel . . . (Jeremiah 36:2)

Other writers wrote what they experienced or what God revealed:

Write the things which thou hast seen, and the things which are, and the things which shall be hereafter. (Revelation 1:19)

God inspired the words in the Bible and used approximately 40 different men to write the scriptures. These men wrote His message over a period of 1500 years. The perfect agreement of these writers is one excellent proof that they were all guided by a single author. That author was God.

INERRANCY OF THE WORD

"Inerrancy of the Word" means that the scriptures are without error, whether they refer to theological, geographical, or historical issues. For this reason, the scriptures are the final authority in matters of faith, doctrine, and practice. The Word takes precedence over tradition, culture, and man-made doctrines. Any difficulties perceived in the accuracy of the text occur because of errors in our interpretation or our lack of understanding.

CANONICITY OF THE WORD

The process of canonicity refers to the Church's recognition of the divine origin and authority of the sixty-six books of the Bible. The Church did not determine which books were of divine origin, but recognized these books as being canonical--meaning that they were self-authenticated by the book itself. The contents of these books verify they are the authentic Word of God.

The criteria for acceptance was:

- The writer's authority. The book must be written by a legitimate and recognized apostle, prophet, etc.
- The content: The book must contain internal evidence that it was inspired and authoritative.
- Acceptance: No book whose authenticity was doubted by any large number of churches was accepted.

The present Old Testament content is reliable based on historical records such as the discovery of the Dead Sea Scrolls in 1947. They provided a Hebrew text from the second to first centuries B.C. of all but one of the books (Esther) of the Old Testament. Other means of checking accuracy included the Septuagint--a complete Greek Old Testament translation dated 200 B.C.--and the Latin Vulgate by Jerome dated A.D. 400.

More than 5000 manuscripts of the New Testament exist, which makes it the best verified document in all ancient writings. Many of these copies are early, dating from A.D. 135 to the 8th century. Codex Sinaiticus (4th century), Codex Vaticanus (4th century), and Codex Alexandrius (5th century) are virtually complete manuscripts of the New Testament.

INTERPRETATION OF THE WORD

Interpretation is the way the Word of God is understood. You should approach the Word without any presuppositions, traditions, or cultural influences. You must understand what the author meant and how it applies to your life. To properly interpret the Word you should study it as a whole, compare scripture with scripture, study the historical and cultural context, study by its contents, and by books, chapters, paragraphs, and words. Hermeneutics is a term that is used for the science that teaches the principles of interpretation. Hermeneutics seeks to answer two questions: What the Bible says and what it means.

ILLUMINATION OF THE WORD

Illumination refers to the work of the Spirit that enables a born-again believer to understand and interpret the truth:

But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God. Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned. (1 Corinthians 2:9-14)

Believers are commanded to:

Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the Word of truth. (2 Timothy 2:15)

God has provided a special Teacher to help you when you study His Word. When Jesus was living on earth He personally taught His followers the truths of God. But Jesus knew that after

His death and resurrection He would be returning to Heaven, so He told His followers that a special Teacher would be sent to help them understand God's Word. That Teacher is the Holy Spirit:

But the comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, He shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you. (John 14:26)

Howbeit when He, the Spirit of truth is come, He will guide you into all truth; for He shall not speak of Himself; but whatsoever He shall hear, that shall He speak and He will shew you things to come. (John 16:13)

The coming of the Holy Spirit is recorded in Acts chapter 2. Through the Holy Spirit you receive a special, supernatural ability to understand God's Word:

But the anointing which ye have received of Him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you; but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in Him. (1 John 2:27)

APPLICATION OF THE WORD

Applying the Word means to allow the Bible to speak to you personally--educating, encouraging, convicting, and guiding your life. Applying the Bible means you act upon the Word of God, not just learn about it. Revelation should result in transformation--true change--in your life:

But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves. For if any be a hearer of the word, and not a doer, he is like unto a man beholding his natural face in a glass: For he beholdeth himself, and goeth his way, and straightway forgetteth what manner of man he was. But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth therein, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed. (James 1:22-25)

For Bible study methods which include instruction on application of the Word, see the Harvestime International Network course entitled "*Creative Bible Studies*." See also the principles of interpretation provided in the Supplemental Studies of this chapter.

STRUCTURE OF THE WORD

Major Sections.

The Bible is divided into two major sections called the Old Testament and the New Testament. The word "testament" means "covenant." A covenant is an agreement. The Old Testament records God's original covenant or agreement with man. The New Testament records the new covenant made by God through His Son, Jesus Christ.

What was the subject of these two agreements? They both concerned restoring sinful man to right relationship with God. God made a law that sin can only be forgiven through the shedding of blood: "...without shedding of blood is no remission (forgiveness)" (Hebrews 9:22).

Under God's agreement in the Old Testament, blood sacrifices of animals were made to obtain forgiveness for sin. This was a symbol of the blood sacrifice Jesus Christ would provide under the new agreement with God. Through the birth, life, death, and resurrection of Jesus, a final sacrifice for sin was made:

But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building; Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by His own blood He entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us. For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh: How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? And for this cause He is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance. (Hebrews 9:11-15)

Both testaments are the Word of God and we must study both in order to understand God's message. The terms "old" and "new" testaments are used to distinguish between God's agreement with man before and after the death of Jesus. We do not disregard the Old Testament simply because it is called "old." Both testaments center on the revelation of Jesus Christ.

Division By Books.

The Bible is further divided into 66 books. The Old Testament has 39 books. The New Testament contains 27 books. Each book is divided into chapters and verses. Although the content of each book is the Word of God, the division into chapters and verses was made by man to make it easier to locate specific passages. It would be very difficult to find a passage if the books were all one long paragraph.

The books of the Old Testament are divided into four major groups: Law, history, poetry and prophecy.

The Books Of The Law: There are five books of law. The names of these books are:

- Genesis
- Exodus
- Leviticus
- Numbers
- Deuteronomy

These books record the creation of man and the world by God and the early history of man. They tell how God raised up the nation of Israel as a people through which He could reveal Himself to the nations of the world and record the laws of God. The best known parts are the

Ten Commandments (Exodus 20:3-17); the greatest of all commandments (Deuteronomy 6:5); and the second greatest commandment (Leviticus 19:18).

The Books Of History: There are 12 books of history in the Old Testament. The names of the books of history are:

Joshua
Judges
Ruth
1 and 2 Samuel
1 and 2 Kings
1 and 1 Chronicles
Ezra
Nehemiah
Esther

The books of history cover a thousand years of the history of God's people, Israel. Naturally they do not tell everything that happened, but they record the major events and show the results of both following and ignoring God's law.

The Books Of Poetry: There are five books of poetry. The names of the books of poetry are:

Job
Psalms
Proverbs
Ecclesiastes
Song of Solomon

These books are the worship books of God's people, Israel, and are still are used in worship by believers today. Psalm 23 is an example of the beautiful worship poetry contained in these books.

The Books Of Prophecy: The books of prophecy of the Old Testament are divided into two groups which are called Major and Minor prophetic books. This does not mean the Major Prophets are more important than the Minor Prophets. The title is simply used because the Major Prophets are longer books than the Minor Prophets. There are 17 books of prophecy in the Old Testament. The names of the books of prophecy are:

Major Prophets:

Isaiah
Jeremiah
Lamentations
Ezekiel
Daniel

Minor Prophets:

Hosea	Nahum
Joel	Habakkuk
Amos	Zechariah

Obadiah	Haggai
Jonah	Zechariah
Micah	Malachi

These books are prophetic messages from God to His people about future events. Many of the prophecies have already been fulfilled, but some remain to be fulfilled in the future.

The books of the New Testament also are divided into four groups: Gospels, History, Letters, and Prophecy.

The Gospels: There are four books in the Gospels. The names of these books are:

Matthew
Mark
Luke
John

These books tell about the life, death, and resurrection of Jesus. Their purpose is to lead you to believe that He is the Christ, the Son of God.

The Book Of History: There is one book of history in the New Testament, the book of Acts. This book tells how the Church began and fulfilled Christ's commission to spread the Gospel throughout the world.

Letters: There are 21 letters in the New Testament. The names of these letters are:

Romans	Titus
1 and 2 Corinthians	Philemon
Galatians	Hebrews
Ephesians	James
Philippians	1 and 2 Peter
Colossians	1, 2, and 3 John
1 and 2 Thessalonians	Jude
1 and 2 Timothy	

The letters are addressed to all believers. Their purpose is to guide them in living and help them do what Jesus commanded. Romans 12 is a good example of their teaching. The letters are also sometimes called "epistles" which means letters.

Prophecy: Revelation is the only book of prophecy in the New Testament. It tells of the final victory of Jesus and His people. Its purpose is to encourage you to keep living as a Christian should live until the end of time. Its message is summarized in Revelation 2:10.

Spiritual Divisions.

There are two major spiritual divisions to God's Word: The milk of the Word and the meat of the Word. The milk of the Word is basic truth easily understood. The meat of the word is the deeper teachings of God's Word which bring spiritual maturity. Read about these divisions in Hebrews 5:13-14 and 1 Peter 2:2.

Divisions Of "Rhema" And "Logos":

There are two different Greek words used in the Bible for the Word of God. One of these Greek words is "logos" which refers to the total utterance of God. It is the complete revelation of what God has said.

The second word, "rhema," refers to a specific verse or passage that applies to a special situation. The total "logos" revelation of the Word of God is powerful, but when God quickens a "rhema" word from His written Word, it is especially powerful. A verse you have read many times before suddenly takes on new meaning and is applicable to a specific situation you are facing. The "rhema" Word gives you the answer, revelation, or comfort needed at a special time.

Jesus used the "rhema" word to successfully overcome the temptations of Satan. Read about this encounter in Matthew 4:1-11; Mark 1:12-13; and Luke 4:1-13. First, Satan tried to get Jesus to turn stones into bread. Next, Satan tried to get Jesus to cast Himself down from the top of the temple to demonstrate His power. In the third encounter, Satan said he would give up all the kingdoms of the world if Jesus would worship him. In each of these temptations, Jesus met the challenge with the Word of God. Jesus quoted Scriptures applicable to the immediate situation by using the "rhema" Word of God.

Divisions Of Milk And Meat:

The "milk" of God's Word refers to simple truths that even a child can understand, such as the plan of salvation. The "meat" of God's Word refers to deeper spiritual truths which are not so easy to understand.

In the natural world there is nothing wrong with milk for a newborn baby. The same is true in the spiritual world. When you are first born again you should desire the milk of God's Word:

*As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby.
(1 Peter 2:2)*

But there comes a time in the natural world when a baby must start to eat solid foods if he is to mature physically. This is also true in the spiritual world. There is a time when you must move on from the milk of God's Word to the meat:

For every one that useth milk is unskillful in the word of righteousness; for he is a babe. But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason and use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil. (Hebrews 5:13-14)

Here are three steps for moving from the milk of the Word to the meat of the Word:

First, you must receive the milk. You must gain an understanding of the basic principles of the Word of God: *"As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word that ye may grow thereby" (1 Peter 2:2)*. You cannot start with spiritual meat.

Second, you must be obedient to God's Word. Carnal Christians do not obey what they learn in the milk of God's Word, so they are not able to mature on to meat. The Bible teaches that it is not enough to hear His Word, you must also act upon it obediently.

Third, you must search for the meat. In the natural world, chewing meat requires more physical effort than drinking milk. The same is true in the spiritual world. Discovering the meat of God's Word requires more spiritual effort than living on the milk of the Word. Proverbs chapter 2 tells how to search for the deep things--the riches and the meat--of God's Word.

THE UNITY OF THE WORD

When we speak of the unity of the Bible, it means two things:

The Bible is united in content. Even though the Bible was written by 40 writers over 1500 years, there are no contradictions. One author does not contradict any of the others. The Bible includes discussion of hundreds of controversial subjects, yet the writers spoke on such subjects with harmony from the first book of Genesis through the last book of Revelation. This was possible because there was really only one author: God. The writers recorded the message under His direction and inspiration. For this reason, the content of the Bible is united.

The Bible is united in theme. Some people think the Bible is a collection of 66 separate books on different subjects. They do not realize that the Bible is united by a major theme. From beginning to end, the Bible reveals God's special purpose which is summarized in the book of Ephesians:

Having made known unto us the mystery of His will, according to His good pleasure which He hath purposed in Himself: That in the dispensation of the fullness of times He might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in Him: In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of Him who worketh all things after the counsel of His own will. (Ephesians 1:9-11)

The Bible reveals the mystery of God's plan which is the unifying theme of the Bible. It is the revelation of Jesus Christ as the Savior of sinful mankind. Jesus explained how the Old Testament centered on Him:

And He said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms concerning me. (Luke 24:44)

With this introduction, Jesus continued and...

*...opened He their understanding that they might understand the scriptures.
(Luke 24:45)*

What was the key Jesus gave them to understanding the Scriptures? The fact that its major theme focused on Him:

*...Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day: And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in His name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. And Ye are witnesses of these things.
(Luke 24:46-4)*

The Old and New Testaments both tell the story of Jesus. The Old Testament prepares us for His coming and the New Testament tells how it happened. This unites the Bible in one major theme. The people who looked forward to Christ's sacrifice in Old Testament times were saved from their sins through faith in God's promise. Everyone who looks back to it as having been fulfilled in Jesus Christ is saved in the same way: Through faith that it happened just as God promised.

THE DIVERSITY OF THE WORD

When we speak of the "diversity" of the Bible it means that the Bible has variety. It records different ways in which God dealt with people and the different ways in which they responded to Him. The Bible is written in different moods. Some portions express joy while others reflect sorrow. The Bible includes different types of writing--history, poetry, prophecy, letters, adventure, parables, miracles, and love stories.

VERSIONS, TRANSLATIONS, PARAPHRASES

The Bible was originally written in three languages. Most of the Old Testament was written in Hebrew except for parts of the books of Daniel and Nehemiah which were written in Aramaic. The New Testament was written in Greek. None of the original manuscripts of the Bible are now in existence. Some good manuscripts exist which are copies of the original.

Versions are translations of copies of the original manuscripts. From early times men saw the necessity of translating the Bible so everyone could read it in their own language. There are many different versions of the Bible. The word "version" means a Bible is written in a language different from those in which God's Word was originally written. There are two main types of versions of the Bible: Translations and paraphrases.

A translation is an effort to express what the Greek, Hebrew, and Aramaic words actually say. It gives as nearly as possible a literal word-by-word translation. Extra words are inserted only when it is necessary in order for the reader to understand the meaning.

A paraphrase does not attempt to translate word for word. It translates thought by thought. A paraphrase is a restatement of the meaning of a passage. Paraphrase versions are easier to read and understand because they are written in modern vocabulary and grammar, but they are not an exact translation of God's Word.

PURPOSES OF THE WORD

The Word of God:

- Is profitable for doctrine, reproof, correction, and instruction: 2 Timothy 3:16-17
- Brings belief in the Gospel message: Acts 4:4
- Cleanses: John 15:3; Ephesians 5:26
- Brings eternal life, if we hear and believe it: John 5:24
- Is the basis for eternal judgment: John 12:48
- Is used to cast out unclean spirits: Matthew 8:16; Luke 4:36
- Is followed by miraculous signs and convinces people of the truth of the Gospel: Mark 16:20
- Gives assurance of salvation: 1 John 1:2-6
- Brings the born again experience: 1 Peter 1:23; Psalms 119:41
- Bears record of the truth of the Gospel: 1 John 5:7
- Sanctifies the believer: 1 Timothy 4:5
- Gives hope: Psalms 130:5; 119:49,81
- Brings healing: Psalms 107:20
- Keeps you from the path of the destroyer: Psalms 17:4
- Is spirit and life: John 6:63
- Brings joy and rejoicing: Jeremiah 15:16
- Increases faith: Romans 10:17
- Comforts: 1 Thessalonians 4:18, Psalms 119:50,52
- Brings spiritual nourishment: 1 Timothy 4:6
- Brings answered prayer: John 15:7
- Is the key to success: Joshua 1:8
- Blesses, if we hear and keep it: Luke 11:28
- Brings blessings when it is kept and curses when it is not: Deuteronomy 28
- Is a weapon in the time of temptation: Matthew 4
- Converts the soul: Psalms 19:7
- Makes wise the simple: Psalms 19:7
- Enlightens: Psalms 19:8
- Warns: Psalms 19:11
- Brings great reward: Psalms 19:11
- Permits access to Heaven: Revelation 22:14
- Brings the blessing of walking in righteousness: Psalms 119:1-3
- Makes you wiser than your enemies, teachers, and the ancients: Psalms 119:98-104
- Quickens: Psalms 119:25
- Strengthens: Psalms 119:28
- Is the basis of His mercy: Psalms 119:58
- Brings delight: Psalms 119:92

- Gives the simple understanding: Psalms 119:130,104,169
- Delivers: Psalms 119:170

THE RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORD

Because the Word of God is so important to the eternal destiny of all mankind and because Jesus commanded it, believers have a responsibility to make it known to the world.

The early Church assumed this responsibility and went everywhere preaching the Word (Acts 8:4; 12:24; 13:49). They asked God for boldness to speak His Word (Acts 4:29,31) and the Gospel spread throughout the world because of their faithfulness (Acts 6:7; 19:20).

We also have a responsibility for spreading this powerful Word to the world. Learn about this responsibility by studying the following Scriptures:

-God puts His Word in you so you can speak it to others: Deuteronomy 18:18-19; Isaiah 51:16; Jeremiah 1:9; 3:12; 5:14; 26:12; Ezekiel 2:7-8.

-If you are taught in God's Word, then you have a responsibility to teach others: Galatians 6:6.

-You are to preach the Word throughout the world: Luke 24:47; Mark 16:15; 2 Timothy 4:2.

-You are not to speak your own words, but His words: Isaiah 58:13.

-You are not to be ashamed of the Word: Mark 8:38.

-You are to teach the Word to your children: Deuteronomy 6:6-9.

SELF-TEST

1. What is the meaning of the word Bibliology?

2. What does the word "scripture" mean?

3. What topics are often studied in Bibliology?

4. Define the word "revelation" as used in Bibliology.

5. Define the word "inspiration" as used in Bibliology.

6. What is meant by the "inerrancy" of the Word of God?

7. What is meant by the "canonicity" of the Word of God?

8. What is meant by the interpretation of the Word of God?

9. With what attitude should one approach the Word in order to properly interpret it?

10. Define "illumination" as used in the study of Bibliology.

11. What does it mean to apply the Word of God?

12. What are the two covenant divisions of the Bible?

13. What are the two major divisions of the Bible?

14. Into how many books is the Bible divided?

15. What are the four Old Testament divisions of books?

16. What are the four New Testament divisions of books?

17. What are the two spiritual divisions of the Bible? Define them.

18. What does the word "logos" mean?

19. What does the word "rhema" mean?

20. In what two ways is the Bible called united?

21. What is meant by the "diversity" of the Bible?

22. In what three languages was the Bible originally written?

23. What is a version of the Bible?

24. What is meant by a translation of the Bible?

25. What is meant by a paraphrase of the Bible?

26. Using the following references, list some purposes of the Word of God.
 2 Timothy 3:16-17 _____
 Acts 4:4 _____
 John 15:3; Ephesians 5:26 _____
 John 5:24 _____
 John 12:48 _____
 Matthew 8:16; Luke 4:36 _____
 Mark 16:20 _____
 1 John 1:2-6 _____
 1 Peter 1:23; Psalms 119:41 _____
 1 John 5:7 _____

1 Timothy 4:5 _____
Psalms 130:5; 119:49,81 _____
Psalms 107:20 _____
Psalms 17:4 _____
John 6:63 _____
Jeremiah 15:16 _____
Romans 10:17 _____
1 Thessalonians 4:18; Psalms 119:50,52 _____
1 Timothy 4:6 _____
John 15:7 _____
Joshua 1:8 _____
Luke 11:28 _____
Deuteronomy 28 _____
Matthew 4 _____
Psalms 19:7 _____
Psalms 19:7 _____
Psalms 19:8 _____
Psalms 19:11 _____
Psalms 19:11 _____
Revelation 22:14 _____
Psalms 119:1-3 _____
Psalms 119:98-104 _____
Psalms 119:25 _____
Psalms 119:28 _____
Psalms 119:58 _____
Psalms 119:92 _____
Psalms 119:130,104,169 _____
Psalms 119:170 _____

27. Why and how are believers responsible for the Word of God?

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

SUPPLEMENTAL STUDIES

1. Study the Harvestime International Network course entitled "*Creative Bible Study*" for guidelines on how to study the Bible. It will enable you to:
 - Explain how the Bible originated.
 - Describe the organization of the Bible into testaments, major divisions, and books.
 - Summarize basic history and chronology of the Bible.
 - Explain the unity and diversity of the Bible.
 - Explain how different Bible versions developed.
 - Apply rules for proper interpretation of the Bible.
 - Summarize what the Bible teaches about itself.
 - Identify prerequisites for Bible study.
 - Create outlines, charts, summaries, and text markings to help you retain content.
 - Apply creative methods to your study of God's Word.
 - Use Bible study tools.
2. Use the Harvestime International Network courses entitled "*Old Testament Survey*" and "*New Testament Survey*" for an overview of the entire Bible.
3. Use the Harvestime International Network *Legacy Bible Outlines* to study each book of the Bible in depth.
4. Here are some guidelines for interpreting the Bible.

The rule of divine authority. The rule of divine authority means that we accept the Bible as the final authority. We believe that all the Bible is inspired by God, from Genesis through Revelation (2 Timothy 3:16; 2 Peter 1:19-21). There are two different types of inspiration: Verbal and plenary inspiration. By verbal inspiration we mean that every word in the original manuscripts was inspired by God. By plenary inspiration we mean full inspiration of all Scripture as opposed to partial inspiration. Every portion of the Bible is inspired. When we accept the rule of divine authority, then there is no conflict between the Bible and history or science. If there is an apparent conflict it is because we have failed to understand science or history or else the current scientific knowledge is not accurate. When conflicts are apparent, the Bible is taken as the final authority because it is the divinely inspired Word of God. In the past, when apparent conflicts between the Bible and history or science arose, later investigations always proved the Bible to be correct. Personal experiences or opinions must be viewed in terms of the authority of the Word. If someone claims something contrary to the Bible, the Word must be the absolute authority.

The rule of literal interpretation. To interpret the Bible literally means to believe it means exactly what it says. Always interpret the Bible literally unless the context clearly indicates otherwise. When the Bible says Israel crossed the Jordan River on dry ground, accept it literally. When the Bible tells about the walls of Jericho falling down, accept it as it is recorded

by the Holy Spirit. The Bible does contain various "types." Certain persons, places, or events, while literal in themselves, also represent something that will happen in the future. Symbols are also used in the Bible, representing a meaning in addition to its ordinary one. For example, in Mark 14:22 the wine is used as a symbol of the blood of the Lord Jesus Christ. Jesus often used parables when He taught. A parable is a story that is told for the purpose of illustrating a spiritual truth. Whenever Jesus used a parable it is always stated in the Bible. If it does not say it was a parable then the story should be accepted as an actual event.

The rule of contextual consideration. Every verse of the Bible should be studied in its context, meaning it should be studied in relation to the verses which precede and follow it, as well as in relation to the rest of the Bible. Many false doctrines and cults have been created because verses or parts of verses were taken out of their context. To study a verse in its context, seek answers to the following questions:

-Who is speaking or writing? Although all the Bible is God's Word, different men were used in writing and speaking it.

-What is being said? Summarize the main points of what is being said by the speaker or writer.

-To whom is it being said? Israel? The Gentile nations? The Church? A specific person or an individual?

-Why was it said? What is the purpose in the passage? The Bible itself states purposes for some books and passages (John 20:30-31). For other parts of Scripture the reason for writing is not so clearly stated. You must examine the context more closely to determine why the message was recorded.

-When was it said? The time and circumstances of some scriptures will help you understand the meaning.

Interpreting a Scripture within its context helps explain the meaning of the passage. Taking a verse out of context can result in incorrect understanding. Often the context of a Scripture in the Bible gives the interpretation. A good example of this is the parable of the sower in Matthew 13:1-9. If you continue to read the context, the parable is interpreted in verses 18-23. In many cases similar to this the Bible interprets itself within the context. This is why contextual consideration is important. More difficult passages can often be interpreted in light of other passages.

The rule of first mention. The rule of first mention is as follows: The first time a word, phrase, object, or incident is mentioned in the Bible, it gives the key to its meaning anywhere else it occurs. For example, in Genesis 3 there is the first mention of fig leaves. Here, Adam used fig leaves to try to cover his own sin and nakedness by his own efforts. Fig leaves speak of self-righteousness, rejection of God's remedy for sin, and an attempt to justify one's self before God. This is the meaning of fig leaves wherever they are mentioned afterwards in the Bible. For

example, the last time fig leaves are mentioned is by Jesus in Matthew 21 and Mark 11 and 13. Here we find a fig tree with leaves but no fruit. Jesus cursed it and it withered away. To understand this act we need to remember the law of first mention and go back to Genesis 3. Fig leaves represent man's rejection of God's remedy and a self-righteous attempt to justify himself. The fig tree also represented the self-righteous nation of Israel who had rejected Jesus.

The rule of repetition. When something is repeated in Scripture, it means that a truth is of such special importance that it needs to be repeated. John 3 illustrates this rule of repetition. Jesus tells Nicodemus of the necessity of the new birth experience and repeats it three times in verses 3,5, and 7. Whenever the Bible repeats, it is the Holy Spirit's way of saying "Stop and really look at this."

The rule of cumulative revelation. This rule is actually stated in the Bible:

Know this first, that no prophecy of the Scripture is of any private interpretation. For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of men; but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost. (2 Peter 1:20- 21)

The Schofield Bible gives this translation: *"No prophecy of scripture is its own interpretation; That is, it is not isolated from all the that the Word has given elsewhere."*

The rule of cumulative revelation is this: The full truth of God's Word on any subject must not be gathered from an isolated passage. The cumulative (total) revelation of all the Bible says regarding a truth must be considered. This is why it is called the rule of "cumulative" revelation. You cannot base your doctrine, teaching, or beliefs on a few isolated verses about a subject. You must keep studying until your interpretation becomes consistent with the whole of the Scriptures. When two things appear to be contradictory, accept both as scriptural and continue to seek revelation as to how to harmonize the two.

5. Use the follow summary for an overview of the content of each book of the Bible.

OLD TESTAMENT BOOKS: (39 Books)

Books Of Law:

Genesis: Records the beginning of the universe, man, the Sabbath, marriage, sin, sacrifice, nations, and government and key men of God like Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph.

Exodus: Details how Israel became a nation with Moses as leader. Israel is delivered from bondage in Egypt and travels to Mt. Sinai where the law of God is given.

Leviticus: This book was a manual of worship for Israel. It provides instruction to the religious leaders and explains how a sinful people can approach a righteous God. It relates to the coming of Jesus Christ as the Lamb of God who takes away the sins of the world.

Numbers: Records Israel's 40 years of wandering in the wilderness which was a result of disobedience to God. The title of the book is from two numberings (population censuses) taken during the long journey.

Deuteronomy: Records the final days of Moses' life and reviews the laws given in Exodus and Leviticus.

Books Of History:

Joshua: Details how Joshua, the successor of Moses, led the people of Israel into the Promised Land of Canaan. It records the military campaigns and the division of the land among the people.

Judges: Israel turned away from God after Joshua's death. This book records the sad story of their repeated sins and the judges God raised up to deliver them from enemy forces.

Ruth: The story of Ruth, a woman of the Gentile nation of Moab, who chose to serve the God of Israel. She became the great grandmother of David.

1 Samuel: This book centers on three persons: Samuel who was the last of the judges of Israel; Saul, the first king of Israel; and David who succeeded Saul as king.

2 Samuel: The glorious 40 year reign of King David is recorded in this book.

1 Kings: King Solomon's reign and the kings of the divided kingdom through the reigns of Ahab in the north and Jehoshaphat in the south are the subjects of this book.

2 Kings: The final decline of Israel and Judah is recalled in this book. God's people fell into deep sin.

1 Chronicles: The reign of David and preparations for building the temple are recorded here. The time of this book is the same as 2 Samuel.

2 Chronicles: This book continues Israel's history through Solomon's reign with focus on the southern kingdom. It closes with the decree of Cyrus which permitted the return of the people from Babylon to Jerusalem.

Ezra: The return of the Jews from Babylonian captivity is detailed.

Nehemiah: The rebuilding of Jerusalem's walls under the direction of Nehemiah is recalled by this book. The project was begun about 14 years after Ezra's return with the people.

Esther: God's deliverance of the Jews through Esther and Mordecai is the subject of this book.

Books Of Poetry:

Job: This book is the story of Job, a man who lived around the time of Abraham. The theme is the question of why righteous men suffer.

Psalms: The prayer and praise book of the Bible.

Proverbs: Divine wisdom for practical problems of everyday life.

Ecclesiastes: A discussion of the futility of life apart from God.

Song Of Solomon: The romance of Solomon and his Shulamite bride. The story represents God's love for Israel and of Christ for the Church.

Books Of Prophecy:

Isaiah: Warns of coming judgment against Judah because of their sin against God.

Jeremiah: Written during the later decline and fall of Judah. Told of the coming judgment and urged surrender to Nebuchadnezzar.

Lamentations: Jeremiah's lament (expression of sorrow) over the destruction of Jerusalem by Babylon.

Ezekiel: Warns first of Jerusalem's impending fall and then foretells its future restoration.

Daniel: The prophet Daniel was captured during the early siege of Judah and taken to Babylon. This book provides historic and prophetic teaching which is important in understanding Bible prophecy.

Hosea: Theme of this book is Israel's unfaithfulness, their punishment, and restoration by God.

Joel: Tells of the plagues which foreshadowed future judgment.

Amos: During a period of material prosperity but moral decay, Amos warned Israel and surrounding nations of God's future judgment on their sin.

Obadiah: God's judgment against Edom, an evil nation located south of the Dead Sea.

Jonah: The story of the prophet Jonah who preached repentance in Ninevah, capitol of the Assyrian empire. The book reveals God's love and plan of repentance for the Gentiles.

Micah: Another prophecy against Israel's sin. Foretells the birthplace of Jesus 700 years before the event happened.

Nahum: Tells of the impending destruction of Ninevah which had been spared some 150 years earlier through Jonah's preaching.

Habakkuk: Reveals God's plan to punish a sinful nation by an even more sinful one. Teaches that "the just shall live by faith."

Zephaniah: Judgment and restoration of Judah.

Haggai: Urges the Jews to rebuild the temple after a 15 year delay due to enemy resistance.

Zechariah: Further urging to complete the temple and renew spiritual commitment. Foretells Christ's first and second comings.

Malachi: Warns against spiritual shallowness and foretells the coming of John the Baptist and Jesus.

NEW TESTAMENT BOOKS:

The Gospels:

The four books known as the Gospels record the birth, life, ministry, teachings, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. The approach of each book differs:

Matthew: Emphasizes Jesus Christ as King and was directed especially to the Jews.

Mark: Emphasizes Jesus Christ as the Servant of God and was directed especially to the Romans.

Luke: Presents Jesus Christ as the "Son of Man," the perfect man and Savior of imperfect men.

John: Presents Jesus in His position as the Son of God.

Book Of History:

Acts: The one history book of the New Testament records the early growth of Christianity from the time of Christ's return to Heaven through Paul's imprisonment in Rome. The book covers about 33 years and emphasizes the work of the Holy Spirit.

Letters:

Romans: A presentation of the Gospel which stresses salvation by faith alone.

1 Corinthians: Written to correct errors of Christian conduct in the local church.

2 Corinthians: Speaks of the true ministry of the Gospel, stewardship, and Paul's apostolic authority.

Galatians: Deals with the error of mixing law and faith. The theme is justification by faith alone.

Ephesians: Encourages believers regarding their position in Christ.

Philippians: Emphasizes the joy of the Christian unity.

Colossians: Deals with the error of "Gnosticism," a false teachings which denied Jesus was truly Son of God and Son of Man. The book also emphasizes Jesus as head of the Church.

1 Thessalonians: Counsel in Christian living and emphasis on the return of Jesus.

2 Thessalonians: Further instruction on the Lord's return and how knowledge of this should affect everyday life.

1 Timothy: Stresses sound doctrine, orderly Church government, and principles to guide the Church in the years to come.

2 Timothy: Describes the true servant of Jesus Christ. It also warns of the apostasy (spiritual decline) which had already started. It presents the Word of God as the remedy to correct all error.

Titus: Paul's letter to a young minister named Titus who was serving God on the island of Crete. Doctrine and a Godly life are stressed.

Philemon: Paul's intercession for a runaway slave of a wealthy Colossian Christian. It illustrates the intercession of Jesus on the behalf of believers who were once slaves to sin.

Hebrews: Explains the superiority of Christianity over Judaism. Presents Jesus as the Great High Priest and the mediator between God and man.

James: Teaches that true faith is evidenced by works, although salvation is by faith alone.

1 Peter: A letter of comfort and encouragement to believers, especially those suffering spiritual attacks from outside the Church through unbelievers.

2 Peter: A warning against spiritual attacks from within. For example, false teachers who had already "crept" into the Church.

1 John: Written to combat Gnosticism which denied Christ's position as Son of God and Son of Man. The book emphasizes fellowship and love among believers and assures true believers of eternal life.

2 John: Warns against any compromise with doctrinal error and emphasizes that the truth must be guarded in love.

3 John: Warns of the sin of refusing fellowship with those who are true believers.

Jude: Another warning against apostasy and false doctrine. The theme is similar to that of 2 Peter.

Book Of Prophecy:

Revelation: This prophetic book tells of the final events of world history. It tells of the things which were, are, and which will be in the future plan of God (Revelation 4:22).

CHAPTER SEVEN

HAMARTIOLOGY

Sin

DEFINITION

Harmartiology comes from the Greek word *hamartos* meaning sin. Harmartiology, in Christian theology, is the study of sin from a biblical perspective. The study includes biblical definitions of sin, the origin of sin, how sin was introduced into the world, man and the basic sin nature, the solution to the sin problem, the judgment and punishment of sin, and the removal of sin at the end of time.

THE DEFINITION OF SIN

Sin is defined as "missing the mark" of God's righteousness through transgression of His laws or rebellion against His rule. It is like shooting a weapon and missing the target. It is falling short of what you should be and of God's perfect plan for your life. The Bible clearly states that all have sinned and fallen short of God's glory (Romans 3:23). There is no one righteous (Romans 3:10 NIV).

The Bible uses several different words for sin:

Wickedness.

Wickedness means to have an evil mind-set to do mischief. It is a mental disregard for righteousness, justice, truth, and virtue:

So shall it be at the end of the world: The angels shall come forth and sever the wicked from among the just. (Matthew 13:49)

Transgression.

Transgression means breaking the law. It is like a man stepping across a line over which he has no right to step, invading forbidden territory, and crossing the boundary between right and wrong:

Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgression... (Galatians 3:19)

Unrighteousness.

This word means injustice, wrong, iniquity, falsehood, and deceitfulness:

All unrighteousness is sin... (1 John 5:17)

Ungodliness.

Ungodliness means dishonesty, wickedness, and total disregard of God. It is treating God as if He did not exist. Ungodliness is not the same as atheism, which believes there is no God. Ungodliness is knowing there is a God, yet totally ignoring Him and His laws:

For the wrath of God is revealed from Heaven against all ungodliness... (Romans 1:18)

Iniquity.

Iniquity means to be lawless, either without the law or violating the law:

...Depart from me, ye that work iniquity. (Matthew 7:23)

Disobedience.

Disobedience is the opposite of obedience. It means to ignore God and His law:

By one man's disobedience many were made sinners... (Romans 5:19)

Trespass.

Trespass means to leave the right path and cross the boundary from right into wrong. It is like being on another man's property where you do not belong:

And you hath He quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins. (Ephesians 2:1)

THE ORIGIN OF SIN

Evil existed before man was created. Sin was originated by Lucifer, also known as Satan. The Bible records that Lucifer was a special angel who was originally created perfect by God. Lucifer sinned when he tried to stage a rebellion against God. Because of this sin, Lucifer was cast out of Heaven to earth:

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! How art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High... (Isaiah 14:12-14)

Thou art the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set thee so: Thou wast upon the holy mountain of God... Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee...I will cast thee to the ground... (Ezekiel 28:14-16)

HOW SIN WAS INTRODUCED INTO THE WORLD

On earth, Lucifer (who became known as Satan) continued his rebellion against God. When God created the first man and woman (Adam and Eve), Satan led them to sin against God. This rebellion is sometimes called "the fall of man", meaning that man fell from righteousness into sin.

Satan enters the scene on earth in Genesis chapter 3 appearing as a serpent, which is another name for him (Revelation 12:9). He actually appeared in the shape and form of a serpent or snake. To fully understand the temptation, we must note God's initial instructions to man:

And the Lord God commanded the man saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat; But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it; for in the day that thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die. (Genesis 2:16-17)

The first step in Eve's fall into sin was being in the wrong place. In Genesis 3 we find her near the forbidden tree. Proverbs states of the path of wickedness:

Avoid it, pass not by it, turn from it, and pass away. (Proverbs 4:15)

Second, Eve should never have entered into conversation with Satan whose first words questioned the instructions given by God:

And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden? (Genesis 3:1)

Questioning the truth of the Word of God is often how Satan starts the temptation process. In answering Satan, Eve misquoted God's Word. She added to God's instructions as well, and minimized the penalty for sin:

But of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God hath said, ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die. (Genesis 3:3)

Compare this verse with Genesis 2:16-17. God did not say "neither shall ye touch it." This is added by Eve. Right from the beginning, man started adding his ideas, instructions, and legalism to the Word of God. God also said "thou shalt surely die." This was the penalty for eating of the tree. Eve changed this to "lest ye die," meaning "you might die."

Today, there is the same tendency to minimize the penalty for sin. People say, "Surely a righteous God could not send anyone to Hell!" Actually, God does not send anyone to Hell. Man chooses to go there by his own sinful actions. The penalty for sin remains everlasting separation from the presence of God in Hell. People often do not identify sin for what it is. Abortion is called a method of "birth control" instead of murder. Adulterous relationships are sometimes referred to as "affairs."

In answering Eve, Satan contradicted God's Word:

And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die; For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil. (Genesis 3:4-5)

Satan wanted to alienate Eve from God. Satan claimed God knew she would receive great benefits from eating of this tree. She would be more knowledgeable and become like a god. In essence he was saying, "God must not think much of you, Eve, to deny you this wonderful opportunity." Eve should have answered, "I am already like God," because she was created in God's image.

Genesis 3:6 describes the darkest moment in human history:

And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat. (Genesis 3:6)

To summarize: Eve was in the wrong place. She put herself in a place where she was likely to be tempted. Then she listened to the enemy, Satan. Next she looked longingly upon that which God had forbidden. Then Eve proceeded to take and eat from the tree. She partook of that which God had labeled SIN. The final result was that her sin affected Adam when she gave the fruit to him and he ate. When you sin, it usually affects those around you and when they sin, they enter the same destructive cycle of sin.

RESULTS OF SIN

Immediate Results Of The Fall Into Sin:

-Knowledge of good and evil: Immediately after the fall, Adam and Eve were no longer in a state of innocence. They recognized the difference between good and evil and realized they were naked and sinful (Genesis 3:7).

-Self-righteousness: Adam and Eve tried to make clothing from fig leaves which is a type (an outward example) of what man tries to do spiritually. Realizing we are sinners, we think self-improvement will correct our sin (Genesis 3:7), but our self-righteousness is as inadequate as the fig leaves were to cover Adam and Eve: *"But we are all as an unclean thing and all our righteousness are as filthy rags" (Isaiah 64:6).*

-Fear and shame: When God came to walk and talk with Adam and Eve, they hid themselves in shame and fear (Genesis 3:10). Shame and fear are basic emotions from which all other negative emotional responses evolve.

-Separation from God: God did not remove Himself from man's presence, rather, it was man that removed himself from God. Adam and Eve tried to hide from God.

Specific Judgments On The Serpent: These included:

-Changed physical form: The physical form Satan used for the temptation was cursed. The serpent originally walked upright, but from this time on he wiggled on his belly through the dust.

-Enmity between Satan and man: This was the beginning of what we call "spiritual warfare," with Satan struggling for the soul of man. This warfare continues to the present day. Harvestime International Institute offers a course entitled *"Spiritual Strategies: A Manual Of Spiritual Warfare"* which focuses on this spiritual battle and provides strategies for victory over the enemy.

-A crushed head: The third penalty on the serpent is actually a promise to sinful man. Although Satan would "bruise the heel" of man spiritually through sin, the seed (descendant) that would come from woman would crush the head of Satan (Genesis 3:15). This was the first promise of a Savior for the sin of mankind. Although Satan would affect man through sin, a Savior would be sent by God through woman and the power of sin would be crushed. The tragedy of sin came through the fall of a woman. Redemption would also come through a woman who would give birth to the Lord Jesus Christ.

Specific Judgments On Adam: These were:

-Labor a weariness: Prior to sin Adam tended the ground in joyful ease, but now he must labor hard. The environment of the earth changed. The ground that was once fertile and without pests or weeds became filled with thorns and thistles.

-Death: The penalty of natural death was imposed on Adam. God said his body would return to the ground, for "dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return." Spiritual death was also a penalty of sin. God said "the soul that sinneth, it shall die" (Ezekiel 18:20). Without forgiveness, man would die the spiritual death of eternal separation from God.

Specific Judgments On Eve: These were:

-Sorrow in childbirth: The curse of pain and sorrow was placed upon child bearing.

-Subjection: Eve would become subject to her husband.

Penalties On Both Adam And Eve: God removed Adam and Eve from the beautiful environment of the Garden of Eden to a world filled with sorrow, pain, thorns, and death.

God warned Adam and Eve that the penalties of sin would include physical and spiritual death. Spiritual death was a loss of their relationship with God. Physical death was death of their physical bodies. The only bright spot in the entire chapter of Genesis 3 is the promise of the coming Redeemer who would crush the power of Satan (Genesis 3:15).

MAN AND THE BASIC SIN NATURE

Originally, man was created in the image of God. He was innocent and righteous. As the first human, he lived in a perfect environment so therefore his sin did not result from his environment or because of his ancestors--factors which are often erroneously blamed for sin.

Because of the sin of Adam and Eve, however, sin and death were passed on to all men:

Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned. (Romans 5:12)

Everyone born inherits the basic nature of sin. His conscience (1 Timothy 4:2); his will (Romans 1:28); his heart (Ephesians 4:18); his intellect (2 Corinthians 4:4; Romans 1:28); and his total being have all been corrupted (Romans 1:18-3:29).

Just as physical traits are inherited, the spiritual trait of the basic sin nature is inherited. Each person sins and faces the penalties of physical and spiritual death. Everyone inherits the basic sin nature and each person sins individually when he is drawn by this sinful nature to rebel against God:

Every man is tempted when he is drawn away of his own lust and enticed. Then when lust hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin: and sin, when it is finished, bringeth forth death. (James 1:14-15)

All have sinned, but God has provided a way to escape the penalties of sin. Through repentance from dead works and accepting Jesus Christ as personal Savior you can be "saved" from the penalties of sin. (See the doctrine of Soteriology in this manual.)

THE SOLUTION TO THE SIN PROBLEM

Jesus said, *"I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through Me"* (John 14:6). Acts 4:12 confirms, *"Salvation is found in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given to men by which we must be saved."* Jesus Christ is the answer to the sin problem. He is the only way to God and the only way to be forgiven. Romans 10:9 declares, *"If you confess with your mouth, Jesus is Lord: and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved."*

Ultimately, sin separates people from God, yet God has provided reconciliation and forgiveness of sin through His Son Jesus Christ. The solution to the problem of sin is repentance and redemption through Christ (Romans 5:12-21; Romans 7:21-25; Colossians 2:13-15).

THE JUDGMENT AND PUNISHMENT OF SIN

All people deserve judgment for sin, yet Christ saves those who trust in Him for eternal life and forgiveness of sins (John 3:16). Believers who sin may be judged by the Lord for corrective purposes, yet they do not lose their salvation each time they sin (Romans 8:37-39; Ephesians 2:8-9). Those who do not trust in Christ receive eternal punishment as their judgment (Matthew 25:46).

Spiritual death, physical death, and eternal death are all punishments for sin, as are certain sufferings in this life. But beyond question, eternal death is the gravest punishment for sin imaginable because there is no other opportunity for reconciliation with God as it results in eternal separation from God (2 Thessalonians 1:8-9).

Sin always has consequences for both the present life and the next. A believer cannot escape certain consequences and/or discipline for his unconfessed sin, but this judgment does not revoke his salvation unless he totally turns his back against God. There are penalties connected with the believer's unconfessed sin, however. These include:

- Losing his joy and peace: Galatians 5:22.
- Becoming a spiritual hindrance to others: 1 John 2:10.
- Hindering their prayers: 1 John 3:19-22.
- Grieving the Holy Spirit: Ephesians 4:30.
- Feelings of shame at the Lord's return: 1 John 2:28.
- Losing fellowship with God and other believers: 1 John 1:6.
- Discipline from God for persistent sin: Hebrews 12:6.
- Church discipline for certain sins: 1 Corinthians 5:4-5.
- Physical death as a result of certain sins: 1 Corinthians 11:30.

The remedy for the believer's sin is to confess and forsake it (1 John 1:8-9).

THE END OF SIN

Sin will continue to exist until the end of time as we know it, at which time judgment will occur and the curse of sin will be removed as God's children experience eternal joy in the presence of the Lord (Revelation 21). Sin will no longer exist. Revelation 22:3 reveals that there... *"No longer will there be anything accursed, but the throne of God and of the Lamb will be in it, and his servants will worship him."*

SELF-TEST

1. Define Harmartiology.

2. What subjects does the study of Harmartiology include?

3. Define the following words:

-Sin _____

-Wickedness _____

-Transgression _____

-Unrighteousness _____

-Ungodliness _____

-Iniquity _____

-Disobedience _____

-Trespass _____

4. How did sin originate and by whom?

5. How was sin introduced into the world?

6. Summarize the progression of mankind's fall into sin as recorded in Genesis 3.

7. Describe the immediate results of the first sin.

-Knowledge of good and evil _____

-Self-righteousness _____

-Fear and shame _____

-Separation from God _____

8. List three specific judgments on the serpent.

9. List two specific judgments on man.

10. List two specific judgments on Eve.

11. From where were Adam and Eve banned after they sinned?

12. Summarize what the Bible teaches regarding the "basic sin nature".

13. What is the Biblical solution to the problem of sin?

14. What does the Bible teach regarding the judgment and ultimate penalties for sin?

15. What do these references teach regarding the penalties of unconfessed sin?

- Galatians 5:22 _____
- 1 John 2:10 _____
- 1 John 3:19-22 _____
- Ephesians 4:30 _____
- John 2:28 _____
- John 1:6 _____
- Hebrews 12:6 _____
- 1 Corinthians 5:4-5 _____

16. When will there be an end to sin?

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

SUPPLEMENTAL STUDIES

1. The following references are a compilation of sins listed in the Bible. Some are repeated in more than one list. There are...

- Seven which come from the heart and defile: Matthew 15:18-20
- Thirteen which come from the heart and defile: Mark 7:21-23
- Twenty-three which bring the judgment of God: Romans 1:29-32
- Seven which believers cannot do: Romans 13:13,14
- Six with which believers should not associate: 1 Corinthians 5:9-11
- Ten which prevent entrance into the Kingdom of God: 1 Corinthians 6:9,10
- Seventeen which prevent entrance into the Kingdom of God: Galatians 5:19-21
- Four which bring wrath and prevent entrance into the Kingdom of God: Ephesians 5:5-6
- Eleven from which believers must turn away: 2 Corinthians 12:20-21
- Nine in which the unsaved live and in which believers should not live: Ephesians 4:17-19
- Six which must not exist among believers: Ephesians 5:3,4
- Nine which believers should put away: Ephesians 4:25,28,29,31
- Six which believers must put off: Colossians 3:8,9
- Six which believers must mortify and which bring the wrath of God: Colossians 3:5-6
- Fourteen for which the law was given: 1 Timothy 1:9-10
- Nineteen from which believers must turn away: 2 Timothy 3:1-5
- Nine from which believers are saved: Titus 3:3-5
- Five which believers must lay aside: 1 Peter 2:1
- Seven sins of the flesh in which believers no longer live: 1 Peter 4:2-4
- Eight which condemn to the lake of fire: Revelation 21:8
- Six which prevent access to the tree of life and the holy city: Revelation 22:14

2. Study the following outline of the teaching of Jesus regarding sin:

Satan And Sin:

Matthew 4:10; 12:26,27; 13:19; 16:23; 25:41
Mark 3:23,26; 4:15; 8:33
Luke 4:8; 10:18; 11:18,19; 22:31
John 8:34-36; 14:30

Blasphemy:

Matthew 12:31,32; 15:19
Mark 3:28,29; 7:21,22
Luke 12:10

Skepticism:

Matthew 14:31; 17:17,20
Mark 2:8; 9:19; 16:16
Luke 9:41
John 3:11,12,18; 4:48; 5:38,40,43-47; 6:64; 8:24,45-47; 12:47,48; 15:22,24,

Hypocrisy:

Matthew 6:2,16; 15:7,8; 23:13-15,25,27-29

Mark 7:6; 12:40

Luke 11:44; 12:1; 20:47

Pride:

Matthew 23:5-7,12

Mark 7:21,22; 12:38,39

Luke 11:43; 14:11; 20:46

Anger:

Matthew 5:22

Murder:

Matthew 5:21; 15:19; 19:17,18

Mark 7:21; 10:19

Luke 18:20

John 8:44

Adultery, Fornication, Lasciviousness:

Matthew 5:27,28,32; 15:19; 19:9,11,12,17,18

Mark 7:21,22; 10:11,12,19

Luke 16:18; 18:20

Divorce:

Matthew 5:31,32; 19:8,9

Mark 10:3,5,11,12

Luke 16:18

Theft:

Matthew 15:19; 19:17,18

Mark 7:21,22; 10:19

Luke 18:20

False Witness, Deceit, Fraud:

Matthew 15:19; 19:17,18

Mark 7:21,22; 10:19

Luke 18:20

John 8:44

Evil Thoughts, Evil Eye, Wickedness, Foolishness:

Matthew 6:23; 9:4; 15:19; 20:15

Mark 7:21,22

Luke 11:34

Covetousness:

Mark 7:21,22

Luke 12:15-21

Materialism And Worldliness:

Matthew 6:19-21,24; 12:39; 13:3,22; 16:4; 24:38,39

Mark 4:3,7,18,19; 8:12

Luke 8:14; 9:60; 10:41,42; 11:29; 14:16-24; 16:1-9,13,15; 17:26-29; 21:34

John 4:48; 6:27

Procrastination:

To procrastinate means to continuously delay doing something.

Matthew 24:45-51

Luke 12:42-47; 13:25-28; 14:16-20

Judging:

Matthew 7:1-5; 12:7

Mark 4:24

Luke 6:37,41,42

John 8:7,10,11,15

Blindness Of Heart:

Matthew 13:13-15; 15:14; 16:2,3

Mark 4:12; 8:18,21

Luke 8:10; 12:54-56

Backsliding:

To backslide means to turn from following Jesus.

Matthew 12:43-45

Luke 11:24-26

Sacrilege:

Sacrilege is the violation of that which is sacred: Matthew 7:6.

Denunciations Of Sin:

Matthew 10:14,15; 11:22,23; 12:34,41,42; 13:13-15; 16:4; 18:7; 21:19; 23:13-15,25,27,29,33-36

Mark 6:11; 8:12; 11:14

Luke 6:24-26; 9:5; 10:10-15; 11:29,32,42,44,46,47,49-52

CHAPTER EIGHT

SOTERIOLOGY

Salvation

DEFINITION

Soteriology is the area of Christian theology that examines the subject of salvation. Soteriology deals with the entire work of biblical salvation--past, present, and future.

Some of the important questions examined within the study of Soteriology include the following:

- What is salvation?
- Why is salvation required?
- How is salvation described in Scripture?
- What are the meanings of the biblical terms associated with salvation?
- How is a person saved?
- How were people saved in Old Testament times?
- Is baptism required for salvation?
- What about those who have not heard the Gospel?
- Can a person lose their salvation?

SALVATION

Salvation, as it relates to Christian theology, is forgiveness and deliverance from sin and its consequences through Jesus Christ. In the Christian doctrine of salvation, we are saved from "wrath,"--God's judgment of sin (Romans 5:9; 1 Thessalonians 5:9) and from the consequences of sin which is eternal separation from God--also referred to as spiritual death (Romans 6:23).

There is a past, present, and future dimension of salvation. When you repent and accept Jesus Christ as Savior, you are saved from the penalties for sins of the past. As you continue to walk in Christ, you are saved from sins in the present. In the future, you will be delivered from the presence of sin when you enter eternity to dwell forever with the Lord.

WHY SALVATION IS REQUIRED

Salvation is needed because of the original fall of man into sin, the dire consequences of sin, and the fact that the basic sin nature was passed to all people from that time on (Genesis 3; Romans 5; 1 Corinthians 15). The Bible teaches that all have sinned and fallen short of God's original plan that His glory be revealed in us. By nature, we are "children of wrath" and dead in trespasses and sin (Ephesians 2:1-3).

The spiritual results of man's fall into sin included separation from God; guilt; condemnation; depravity; and physical and spiritual death (Genesis 3). We are servants to sin (Romans 6:17) and incapable of saving ourselves (Isaiah 64:6; Romans 3:20).

Salvation is required for forgiveness of sin and access to the presence of God both now and for eternity. God has provided salvation and forgiveness through Jesus Christ, and it is His desire that all should be saved and no one should perish (1 Peter 3:9). God's sovereign will, however, does not negate man's free will to accept or reject Christ as Savior. God's sovereignty and man's responsibility, though humanly difficult to understand, are truths that are an antinomy--meaning two statements that seem opposed to each other, but are both true and obtained by correct reasoning. The biblical balance between the two rests in spiritual revelation, not in carnal reasoning.

LOST THROUGH SIN

These are the tremendous losses that resulted from sin:

Loss of innocence. Immediately after the fall, Adam and Eve were no longer innocent. They recognized the difference between good and evil and realized that they were sinful (Genesis 3:7).

Loss of relationship with God. God did not remove Himself from man's presence, rather, it was man who removed himself from God. When God came to walk and talk with Adam and Eve as He normally did, they hid themselves from Him.

Loss of emotional well-being. Adam and Eve experienced shame and fear (Genesis 3:10). Fear of the future and shame over the past are basic emotions which are roots of all other negative emotional responses.

Loss of godly righteousness. Adam and Eve tried to make clothing from fig leaves which is a type (symbolic) of what man tries to do spiritually. Realizing we are sinners, we try to better ourselves. We think self-improvement will eliminate our sin (Genesis 3:7), but our self-righteousness is as inadequate as the fig leaves were to cover Adam and Eve: *"But we are all as an unclean thing and all our righteousness are as filthy rags"* (Isaiah 64:6, KJV).

Loss of positive relationships with others. When confronted with their sin, Adam blamed Eve and she blamed the serpent. Thus, we see the first dysfunctional family relationships emerge. It is not too long in the biblical record before the first murder occurs when their son, Cain, kills his brother Abel.

Loss of eternal life. Adam and Eve would never have died had not sin entered into the world. Eternal life was lost through sin, which resulted in physical death coming into the world. The Bible says that all will die physically, but more importantly, it decrees that the result of sin is spiritual death through eternal separation from God.

LOSSES RESTORED

The good news is that all of these losses--and all of the other losses which you have experienced --can be restored through a personal relationship with Jesus Christ who came to seek and to save all that was lost (Luke 19:10).

Innocence is restored. The Apostle Paul, who was previously known as Saul, had persecuted and killed believers before his conversion to Christ. Yet Acts 20:26 records that he proclaimed ...*"I declare to you today that I am innocent of the blood of all men"*. How could he say that? Because Paul had experienced salvation through Jesus Christ. Having asked forgiveness and accepted Christ's sacrifice for his sins, Paul was innocent before God.

Relationship with God is restored. *"But now in Christ Jesus you who once were far away have been brought near through the blood of Christ"* (Ephesians 2:13, NIV).

Emotional well-being is restored. Jesus dealt with the fear and shame that resulted from sin. He declared, *"Peace I leave with you; my peace I give you. I do not give to you as the world gives. Do not let your hearts be troubled and do not be afraid"* (John 14:27, NIV).

Godly righteousness is restored. *"For it is not those who hear the law who are righteous in God's sight, but it is those who obey the law who will be declared righteous"* (Romans 2:13, NIV).

Positive relationships with others are restored. *"We know that we have passed from death to life, because we love our brothers"* (1 John 3:14, NIV).

Eternal life is restored. Through Jesus, you can have eternal life restored. Your physical body will someday die, but you will live on in eternity with God: *"For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but to save the world through him"* (John 3:16-17, NIV).

HOW SALVATION IS DESCRIBED IN SCRIPTURE

Salvation is described as the mystery of God that is now revealed (Ephesians 3:9 ; 6:19) and as a plan conceived before the foundations of the world (Ephesians 1:3-14). It is a light (Luke 2:30-32) and provides a transition from spiritual death to life (John 5:24). It is defined as a message for sinners (Mark 2:17); a gift of grace through faith and not of works (Ephesians 2:8-9); and something for which all creation groans (Romans 8:22).

It is also described as the revelation of God's righteousness (Romans 1:16-17); the justification that comes through faith (Romans 4:22-25); reconciliation (2 Corinthians 5:18-19); redemption (Romans 8:23); and as a spiritual birth without which one cannot enter the Kingdom of God (John 3:1-11).

Salvation is also described as freedom from sin (Romans 6); being a new creation (Romans 5:16-17); having peace with God (Romans 5:1); being adopted children of God (Galatians 4:4); baptism into Christ's death (Romans 6:4); and the indwelling of the Holy Spirit (Romans 5, 8).

BIBLICAL TERMS ASSOCIATED WITH SALVATION

This list is alphabetized for ease in studying the terms associated with salvation.

Adoption.

Adoption refers to God's decision to make us members of His family. He is our Heavenly Father, we are called the children of God, and we are brothers and sisters spiritually with all other true believers.

Atonement.

This term refers to the death of Jesus on the cross which atoned--or made amends--for the sins of mankind.

Conversion.

Conversion means "to turn." When it is used in connection with Biblical repentance, it means to "turn from the wrong way to the right way."

And many of the children of Israel shall He turn to the Lord their God. (Luke 1:16)

And all that dwelt at Lydda and Saron saw Him, and turned to the Lord. (Acts 9:35)

And the hand of the Lord was with them; and a great number believed, and turned unto the Lord. (Acts 11:21)

Conversion is turning from the darkness of sin to the light of God's righteousness:

...to turn them from darkness to light. (Acts 26:18)

It is turning from the power of Satan to God:

...to turn them...from the power of Satan unto God. (Acts 26:18)

It is turning from worldly things to spiritual things:

...Ye should turn from these vanities unto the living God. (Acts 14:15)

It is turning from false gods to the true and living God:

...Ye turned to God from idols to serve the living and true God. (1 Thessalonians 1:9)

Faith Towards God.

Faith towards God is listed in Hebrews 6 as the second foundational principle of the Christian faith. Repentance from dead works must be combined with faith towards God in order to be saved:

...Repentance toward God and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ. (Acts 20:21)

Glorification.

Glorification will occur when you receive your resurrected body and enter eternity. There will be some similarity between your mortal body and your glorified one, as the example of Jesus after His resurrection demonstrates (John 21:4), but there will be great differences between that which was sown in dishonor and that which will be raised in honor (1 Corinthians 15:35-49).

Justification.

When you are living in sin, you are condemned before God and separated from Him:

...but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God. And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil. (John 3:18-19)

When you repent from sin and make a decision to turn from your sinful ways, this establishes a right relationship with God. This right relationship or right standing before God is called "justification":

Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness? But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you. Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness. (Romans 6:16-18)

The penalties for sin are physical and spiritual death. When Jesus died on the cross, He paid the penalty for the sins of all mankind: *"For He [God] hath made Him [Jesus] to be sin for us, Who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in Him" (2 Corinthians 5:21).*

If you believe that Jesus died for your sins, you repent, and accept Him as Savior, then you will not experience the spiritual death of eternal separation from God in Hell. Although your physical body will die, you will be resurrected again to eternal life. This is made possible

through the death and resurrection of our Lord Jesus. You are justified, or brought into right relationship to God, by Jesus Christ:

*Being justified freely by His grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus.
(Romans 3:24)*

Much more then, being now justified by His blood, we shall be saved from wrath through Him. (Romans 5:9)

Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ... (Romans 5:1)

In summary, justification refers to a legal declaration by God that your sins--past, present, and future--are forgiven through Jesus, His righteousness is imputed to you, and you are justified before God. Justification comes through faith, and not by works. You do not earn right standing before God, but it is given to you through your repentance from sin and acceptance of Jesus Christ as Savior.

Propitiation.

The basic meaning of this word is "satisfaction", meaning that the death of Jesus satisfied the righteousness of God in terms of a complete sacrifice for the sins of all mankind.

Reconciliation.

Once separated from God by sin, man now has access to Him through the death of Jesus Christ. The separation caused by sin has been bridged by the blood sacrifice of Jesus which reconciled us with God.

Regeneration.

Regeneration denotes the act whereby spiritually dead people are made alive through salvation. The word is used in Titus 3:5, but the concept is taught elsewhere through the terms "born from above" (John 3) and born again (1 Peter 1). Regeneration is often referred to as the "new birth". It is detailed in the following texts: John 1:12-13; 3:3; Titus 3:5-9; James 1:18; 1 Peter 1:3; 2 Corinthians 5:17.

Repentance.

The basic meaning of the word "repentance" is a change of mind which results in a change in outward actions.

Some people associate repentance with emotions like shedding tears and feeling sorry for wrong actions and thoughts. Repentance is not an emotion. It is a decision. Emotion sometimes

accompanies true repentance. But it is possible for a person to feel great emotion and to shed many tears and yet never truly repent.

Other people associate repentance with meeting special religious requirements. This is sometimes called "doing penance." It is possible to fulfill many such religious requirements and yet never repent in the true Biblical sense.

True repentance is a change of mind that results in a change in outward actions, a turning away from sin towards God and righteousness. This "turning away" confirms the inward change which has occurred.

Sanctification.

Sanctification involves three aspects: We were sanctified at the moment of conversion and declared legally holy before God (1 Corinthians 6:11). At the present time we are being sanctified as we are being transformed into the image of the Lord (2 Corinthians 3:18). In the future, we will be completely sanctified as we enter the presence of the Lord for eternity.

The root of this transformation lies in our relationship with Christ (Romans 6:3-4), and the process is never completed in this life (Philippians 3:12-13). We are to aim for perfection (1 Peter 1:15-16) by deliberately putting to death the carnal nature (Colossians 3:5) by putting on the mind and attitudes of Jesus Christ (Romans 13:14)

HOW A PERSON IS SAVED

The Bible says that all have sinned and fallen short of the glory of God (Romans 3:23). Your sins have caused a separation between you and God (Isaiah 59:2), and the end result of this separation is spiritual death (Romans 6:23). The only way to span this division is to be saved by faith in Christ (Ephesians 2:8-9; Romans 5:1).

Jesus died for the sins of the world (1 John 2:2). He is the only way to the God the Father (John 14:6). He has all authority in Heaven and earth (Matthew 28:18), including the power to forgive sins because He bore all the sins of mankind on the cross (1 Peter. 2:24) . To be saved you must believe that Jesus died for your sin, confess and repent of your sin, and accept Him as the sacrifice for your sin. You are saved by God's grace through faith (Ephesians 2:8).

HOW PEOPLE WERE SAVED IN OLD TESTAMENT TIMES

The Bible is clear that salvation takes place by grace, through faith (Ephesians 2:8-9), and through Jesus Christ (John 3:16; Acts 4:12). In the Old Testament, people were saved by looking forward by faith to the cross which they did every time they made a sacrifice for sin. In the New Testament, we look back to the cross by faith. No additional sacrifices for sin are necessary, however, as Jesus paid the ultimate sacrifice for sin.

BAPTISM AND SALVATION

Water baptism is an ordinance of the Church, and believers should follow the example set by Jesus and the command given by Him regarding baptism. It is an outward expression of the inward change that has occurred through the new birth experience. Salvation is based on faith alone, however, so water baptism is not required in order to be saved. The example of the thief on the cross confirms that salvation is by faith alone apart from baptism (Luke 23:39-43).

THOSE WHO HAVE NOT HEARD THE GOSPEL

Because the Bible does not specifically address this issue, we cannot make an absolute statement concerning it. However, since the Bible states that salvation is only through Jesus and that a person must receive Christ as Savior in order to be saved, then we can logically conclude that those who have not heard the gospel are lost. This is all the more reason to preach the gospel to everyone.

...Whoever will call upon the name of the Lord will be saved. How then shall they call upon Him in whom they have not believed? And how shall they believe in Him whom they have not heard? (Romans 10:13-14)

All people are accountable to God whether or not they have heard the Gospel. The Bible tells us that God has clearly revealed Himself in nature (Romans 1:20) and in the hearts of people (Ecclesiastes 3:11). The problem is that people reject this knowledge of God (Romans 1:21-23).

Quite often, it is not that people have not heard about God. Rather, the problem is that they have rejected what they have heard, what has been revealed to them, and what is readily apparent in nature. Deuteronomy 4:29 confirms: *"But if from there you seek the Lord your God, you will find him if you look for him with all your heart and with all your soul."* Everyone who seeks for God will find Him. If a person truly desires to know God, God will make Himself known to them.

ETERNAL SECURITY

There is much discussion among Christians as to whether or not a person can lose their salvation. Some believe that a sinful lifestyle or rejection of an earlier commitment to Christ can result in losing your salvation. They base their belief on Hebrews 5:29 and other passages like Revelation 3:5. This doesn't mean you lose your salvation every time you sin, but that deliberately continuing in sin can result in the loss of salvation.

Others believe "once saved, always saved" based on Romans 8:1, 37-39 and other passages. They teach that a person who has truly come to faith in Christ can never lose his or her faith. This is sometimes called the doctrine of "eternal security".

The important thing in this debate is this: Once you have committed your life to Christ, continue to serve Him faithfully and then you will be assured of your salvation. The Bible teaches that you can be assured--meaning that you can have confidence if you are a true believer--that you are in right relationship to God through Jesus. Study the following scriptures: 1 John 5:13; John 6:39-40; 10:27-30; 17:11; 1 John 3:9; Philippians 1:6; 1 Peter 5:10.

SELF-TEST

1. Define Soteriology.

2. What are some of the questions examined in the study of Soteriology?

3. Define salvation. From what are we "saved"?

4. Explain the past, present, and future dimensions of salvation.

5. Why is salvation required?

6. List and summarize six major losses that resulted from the first sin.

7. Explain how these six major losses resulting from the first sin were restored through salvation.

8. Using the section in this chapter "How Salvation Is Described In Scripture", write a summary statement describing salvation.

9. Define the following biblical terms associated with salvation.

Adoption. _____

Atonement. _____

Conversion. _____

Faith Towards God. _____

Glorification. _____

Justification. _____

Propitiation. _____

Reconciliation. _____

Regeneration. _____

Repentance. _____

Sanctification. _____

10. How is a person saved?

11 How were people saved in Old Testament times?

12. How is salvation related to water baptism? Does water baptism save you? Why should believers be baptized?

13. What happens to people who do not hear the Gospel?

14. Can a person lose their salvation?

15. What is the most important thing in relation to the discussion regarding whether or not a person can lose their salvation?

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

SUPPLEMENTAL STUDIES

Study the Harvestime International Network course entitled "*Foundations of Faith*" for additional teaching regarding salvation and the basics of the Christian faith. The course will enable you to:

- Explain the six basic doctrines of the Christian faith listed in Hebrews 6:1-3 including.
 - Repentance from dead works.
 - Faith toward God.
 - Doctrine of baptisms.
 - Laying on of hands.
 - Resurrection of the dead.
 - Eternal judgment.

- Establish a proper spiritual foundation in your life.

- Go on to spiritual maturity.

"Foundations Of Faith" is available free at: <http://www.harvestime.org>

CHAPTER NINE

ECCLESIOLOGY

The Church

DEFINITION

Ecclesiology is a study of the structure and nature of the Christian Church which is the universal body composed of all true believers in Christ. The word "Church" as used in scripture means "to call out", so the Church is a group of people called out by God and dedicated to His purposes. According to 1 Timothy 3:14-15, the Church is the temple of God, belongs to Him, and is the pillar and ground of truth.

Common topics in Ecclesiology include how the Church began, the organization of the Church, its purpose, the ordinances of the Church, metaphors that describe it, and the destiny of the Church.

HOW THE CHURCH BEGAN

The Church began on the day of Pentecost as described in Acts 2. See also John 16:13; 14:16-17; 16:26-27; and Matthew 16:18 for related passages. The Church emerged after the coming of the Holy Spirit through which all true believers are baptized spiritually into one Body.

THE ORGANIZATION OF THE CHURCH

Although there are many local "churches," there is really only one Church (Ephesians 4:4; Hebrews 12:23). The true Church is both visible and invisible. It is invisible in that it is a spiritual body known as the Kingdom of God and the Body of Christ. It is visible in local congregations of churches to which Christians commit themselves. The Kingdom of God may be thought of as the reign of God, and the Church as the realm in which that reign is visibly manifested.

Various groups of churches have also organized in terms of denominations, i.e., Baptist, Methodist, etc., although denominations are not mandated in God's Word. Denominations are part of the true Church *only* when their beliefs and conduct conform to the Word of God. The attempt to unify all churches, regardless of their stand on biblical truths, is heresy. False doctrines must be refuted (Titus 1:9) and exposed (Ephesians 5:11). The local Church is given the authority to remove from fellowship those who embrace heresy (1 Timothy 1:20; 2 Timothy 2:18; Titus 3:10). The true Church is to separate itself from those who embrace doctrinal error (2 Corinthians 6:14-18; Romans 16:17; Acts 19:8-9). The true Church is composed of those who embrace the fundamental doctrines of the Word of God.

The primary authorities in the Church are God the Father, the Son, the Holy Spirit, and the scriptures. The head of the Church is Jesus Christ (Ephesians 5:23). Within the Church, the leadership gifts of apostle, prophet, pastor, evangelist, and teacher should be operative

(Ephesians 4:11). The Bible also provides guidelines for bishops, elders, deacons and deaconesses to assist in other church-related matters (1 Timothy 3; Titus 1). For further study on the organization of the Church, obtain the Harvestime International Institute courses entitled "*Biblical Management Principles*" and "*Mobilization*" available at: <http://www.harvestime.org>

THE PURPOSE OF THE CHURCH

The purpose of the Church is to fulfill the mandate of Jesus in proclaiming the gospel to the world:

But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth. (Acts 1:8)

To the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly places might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God, According to the eternal purpose which he purposed in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Ephesians 3:10-11)

For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth. (Acts 13:47)

Thus, the gospel message is at the heart of the purpose of the Church and is to be reflected in the lives and ministries of its members. The Church is to worship, praise, glorify, and pray to the one true God and edify one another (Ephesians 1:6,12,14; 3:10).

The Church is also commissioned to establish and equip new believers in the faith:

And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen. (Matthew 28:18-20)

The gifts of the Holy Spirit provide the Church with the abilities needed to fulfill this divine mission to the world. (See Romans 12:4-8; 1 Corinthians 1:7; 12-14; Ephesians 4:11-12; Hebrews 2:3-4; and 1 Peter 4:10-11, plus the discussion on Pneumatology in this study.)

ORDINANCES OF THE CHURCH

There are two main ordinances given to the Church by the Lord. They are water baptism and the Lord's Supper, or as the latter is sometimes referred to, the Eucharist.

The Ordinance Of Water Baptism.

The passage which best introduces water baptism describes the baptism of Jesus:

Then cometh Jesus from Galilee to be baptized of him. But John forbade Him, saying, I have need to be baptized of thee, and comest thou to me? And Jesus answering said unto him, Suffer it to be so now: for thus it becometh us to fulfill all righteousness. Then he suffered Him. And Jesus, when He was baptized went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon Him: And lo a voice from Heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. (Matthew 3:13-17)

Jesus was not baptized by John as evidence that He had repented of sin, because He had no sins for which to repent. Jesus was baptized to "complete all righteousness." He was setting a righteous example of behavior which He wanted all believers to follow.

The following are some issues important to the ordinance of baptism:

-Baptism of babies. Jesus was not baptized as a baby. When He was an infant His parents brought Him to Jerusalem to present Him to the Lord, but He was not baptized until He was old enough to know what He was doing and the reason why He was doing it (Luke 2:22). Babies should not be baptized. Children can be presented to the Lord for dedication and blessing by the laying on of hands, but they should not be baptized until they understand the meaning of the act and have met the Biblical requirements. There is no set age at which this understanding comes. It depends on the mental and spiritual development of each child.

-Sprinkling or immersion. Some churches baptize by sprinkling with water while others totally immerse in water. When Jesus was baptized He went down into and then came up out of the water. Considering this and the Biblical meaning of the word "baptize", we conclude He was fully immersed in the waters of Jordan. In allowing Himself to be baptized, Jesus showed outward obedience to the will and the plan of God. When believers are baptized, this outward act symbolizes the inward decision and the cleansing from sin which they have received by faith.

-The time of baptism. To be eligible for water baptism a person must receive proper instruction, repent, believe, and have a good conscience toward God. The length of time it takes to meet these requirements will differ depending on the individual. Some churches require those who desire baptism to complete long periods of instruction lasting weeks or months, but the Bible says that on the day of Pentecost three thousand people were baptized. A few hours before they were unbelievers who rejected Jesus to be the Messiah of Israel and the Son of God. From the end of Peter's sermon to their baptism, the time required to give necessary instruction could not have exceeded a few hours: "*Then they that gladly received his word were baptized; and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls*" (Acts 2:41). Philip also baptized the Ethiopian the same day he preached the Gospel to him.

-Significance of Christian baptism. The following text reveals the spiritual significance of Christian baptism:

*What shall we say then? Shall we continue in sin, that grace may abound? God forbid. How shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein? Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into His death? Therefore we are buried with Him by baptism into death; That like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.
(Romans 6:1-4)*

When you repent and accept Jesus Christ as Savior, death to sin and the old life occurs. There is the creation of a new life of righteousness to be lived for God:

Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord. Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that ye should obey the lusts thereof... For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace. (Romans 6:11,12,14)

Christian baptism in water is a symbol of the death and resurrection of Jesus. It symbolizes death to sin as you are immersed in that "grave" of water and resurrected into a new life lived for God in righteousness as you come up out of the water. The believer who is raised up out of the water to live this new life does not do this in his own power. His new life is lived by the power of God, the same power that raised Jesus from the grave.

-Requirements For Baptism. There are requirements to be met by those seeking Christian baptism.

1. Instruction: The first requirement for baptism was given by Jesus:

Go ye therefore and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you... (Matthew 28:19-20)

Christ's command to teach new believers is given twice. They are to be taught before and after baptism. Sinners must first hear and receive the Gospel in order to become true believers:

Then they that gladly received his word were baptized. (Acts 2:41)

When they heard this, they were baptized... (Acts 19:5)

A certain woman named Lydia...attended unto the things that were spoken of Paul...and she was baptized. (Acts 16:14-15)

Before baptism, believers should receive enough teaching to understand its meaning. After baptism, they should continue to receive instruction in order to become mature Christians. Paul calls this "going on to perfection" (Hebrews 6).

2. Repentance: The second condition for baptism is repentance from sin. Peter emphasized this during his sermon on the day of Pentecost:

Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do? (Acts 2:37)

Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. (Acts 2:38)

Note that conviction of sin is not enough. Action must be taken. The two commands Peter gave were to repent and be baptized. True repentance must precede baptism.

3. Belief: The third condition for baptism is believing:

And He said unto them, Go ye into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature. He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned. (Mark 16:15-16)

This requirement of believing is illustrated by the story of the Ethiopian man and Philip which occurred on the road from Jerusalem to Gaza (Acts 8). Philip heard the Ethiopian read from the book of Isaiah and he joined him in his chariot to explain the Gospel. As they continued on their journey, the road led past water. Upon the Ethiopian's request and his confession of faith, Philip baptized him:

And as they went on their way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, here is water; what doth hinder me to be baptized? And Philip said, if thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. And He commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him. (Acts 8:36-38)

Philip said to the eunuch: "If you believe with all your heart, you may be baptized." The eunuch replied: "I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God." A person who desires Christian baptism must confess their faith in Jesus Christ as the Son of God.

4. A good conscience toward God: A fourth condition for Christian baptism is a good conscience toward God. Peter compares Christian baptism in water to the experience of Noah and his family who were saved from judgment as they entered into the ark:

The like figure whereunto even baptism doth also now save us [not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God] by the resurrection of Jesus Christ. (1 Peter 3:21)

Peter dismisses any idea that the purpose of baptism is any kind of cleansing of the physical body. He says the condition of Christian baptism is the inner relationship of the believer's heart toward God. He calls it "a good conscience toward God."

The Ordinance Of The Lord's Supper.

It was during the celebration of the Passover on the evening prior to His death that Jesus instituted this ordinance, known as the Lord's Supper. It is an integral part of Christian worship as it reflects back on the Lord's death and resurrection and looks forward to His return in the future.

The Passover was the most sacred feast of the Jewish religious year. It commemorated the final plague on Egypt when the firstborn Egyptian sons died and the Israelites were spared because of the blood of a lamb that was sprinkled on their doorposts--symbolizing the blood of the Lamb Jesus Christ. The lamb was then roasted and eaten with unleavened bread. God's command was that throughout the generations to come the feast would be celebrated. The story of the first Passover is recorded in Exodus 12. The accounts of the Lord's Supper are found in Matthew 26:26-29; Mark 14:17-25; Luke 22:7-22; and John 13:21-30.

During the last supper shared with His disciples--a Passover celebration--Jesus took a loaf of bread and gave thanks to God. As He broke it and gave it to His disciples, He said, "'This is my body given for you; do this in remembrance of me.' In the same way, after the supper he took the cup, saying, 'This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you'" (Luke 22:19-21). Jesus indicated that believers were to do this in remembrance of Him--partaking of the bread and wine symbolizing His body and blood.

Under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, the Apostle Paul wrote concerning the Lord's Supper and included a statement not found in the Gospels:

Therefore, whoever eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of sinning against the body and blood of the Lord. A man ought to examine himself before he eats of the bread and drinks of the cup. For anyone who eats and drinks without recognizing the body of the Lord eats and drinks judgment on himself. (1 Corinthians 11:27-29)

What does it mean to partake of the bread and the cup in an unworthy manner? It means disregarding the true meaning of the bread and cup and ignoring the tremendous price our Savior paid for our salvation. It may also mean to allow the ceremony to become a dead and formal ritual or to partake of the Lord's Supper with unconfessed sin. In keeping with Paul's instructions, we should examine ourselves before eating the bread and drinking the cup to be sure our sins are forgiven and our motives pure.

Another statement Paul made that is not included in Gospels is “*For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord’s death until He comes*” (1 Corinthians 11:26). This places a time limit on the observance. The wine and bread used by Jesus at the last supper with His disciples were metaphors symbolizing His body and blood and we are to continue this ordinance until the Lord’s return in memory of His great sacrifice.

One of the most commonly used passages when observing the Lord's supper is as follows:

For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, That the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread: And when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me. After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in remembrance of me. For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord's death till he come. Wherefore whosoever shall eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body. (1 Corinthians 11:23-29)

METAPHORS DESCRIBING THE CHURCH

A metaphor is a figure of speech that compares two things that have common characteristics. They are natural examples that are used to explain spiritual truths. Study the following metaphors which are used in scripture to describe the Church.

- The Body of Christ: 1 Corinthians 12:12-27; Romans 12:5; Ephesians 4:12,16.
- The Body of Christ of which the Lord is the head: Ephesians 1:22-23.
- The family of God, as we are all sons and daughters of the Lord: 2 Corinthians 6:18.
- A pillar of truth in the world: 1 Timothy 3:15.
- A vine and its branches: John 15:1-11.
- The building of God: 1 Corinthians 3:9 and Ephesians 2:19-22.
- A living temple: Ephesians 2:20-21.
- Each member is a living stone built on the cornerstone, Christ Jesus: 1 Peter 2:9.
- A holy temple in which God dwells: 1 Corinthians 3:16.
- A holy nation: 1 Peter 2:9.
- A royal priesthood: 1 Peter 2:5-9.
- Salt: Matthew 5:13-15.
- Light: Matthew 5:13-15.
- A sweet odor: 2 Corinthians 2:15.
- The Bride of Christ: Ephesians 5:23-32; Revelation 19:7, 8; 21:9.
- The flock of the true Shepherd, Jesus Christ: John 10 and 1 Peter 5:1-3.
- Saints: 1 Corinthians 1:2.

THE DESTINY OF THE CHURCH

The Church will eventually be raptured to be with the Lord. Believers who have died will be resurrected, then those who are alive will be caught up together with them in the air to meet the Lord (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18).

Believers will be judged on their ministries for the Lord, and rewarded accordingly (1 Corinthians 3:10-15 and 2 Corinthians 5:10). The Church will ultimately return with Christ to earth and rule with Him (Revelation chapters 19-20).

SELF-TEST

1. Define Ecclesiology.

2. What are some common topics studied in Ecclesiology?

3. Using the following verses, summarize how the Church began: Acts 2; John 16:13; 14:16-17; 16:26-27; and Matthew 16:18.

4. Using the section in this chapter entitled "Organization of The Church", summarize biblical guidelines for organization of the Church.

5. Summarize what the following verses teach about the purpose of the Church:

-Acts 1:8: _____

-Ephesians 3:10-11: _____

-Acts 13:47: _____

-Matthew 28:18-20: _____

6. Who provides the Church with the abilities needed to fulfill this divine mission? See Romans 12:4-8; 1 Corinthians 1:7; 12-14; Ephesians 4:11-12; Hebrews 2:3-4; and 1 Peter 4:10-11.

7. Answer the following questions regarding the ordinance of water baptism.

-Did the fact that Jesus was baptized mean He had sinned? Explain.

-Should babies be baptized? Why or why not? At what age should a child be baptized?

-Which is most biblical: Sprinkling or immersion?

-How soon after conversion can one be baptized?

-What is the significance of Christian baptism?

-What are the biblical requirements for Christian Baptism?

8. Using the discussion of the ordinance of the Lord's Supper in this chapter, answer the following questions.

When did the Lord institute this ordinance?

Why is this ordinance significant?

What was the occasion? What were Jesus and the disciples celebrating?

What command did Jesus give regarding this ordinance in Luke 22:19-21?

Summarize what Paul taught regarding the Lord's Supper in 1 Corinthians 11:23-29.

What does it mean to partake of the bread and the cup in an unworthy manner?

What does 1 Corinthians 11:26 teach regarding how long we are to observe the Lord's Supper?

9. Using the verses provided, list the biblical metaphors used to describe the Church.

-1 Corinthians 12:12-27; Romans 12:5; Ephesians 4:12,16.

-Ephesians 1:22-23.

-2 Corinthians 6:18.

-1 Timothy 3:15.

-John 15:1-11.

-1 Corinthians 3:9.

-Ephesians 2:20-21.

-1 Peter 2:9.

-1 Corinthians 3:16.

-1 Peter 2:9.

-1 Peter 2:9.

-Matthew 5:13-15.

-Matthew 5:13-15.

-2 Corinthians 2:15.

-Ephesians 5:23-32 and Revelation 19:7, 8; 21:9.

-1 Peter 5:1-3.

-1 Corinthians 1:2.

10. Using the following verses, describe the destiny of the Church: 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18; 1 Corinthians 3:10-15; 2 Corinthians 5:10; and Revelation chapters 19-20).

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

SUPPLEMENTAL STUDIES

1. Study the Harvestime International Network course entitled "*Methodology Of Multiplication*" to learn principles for the internal, expansion, extension, and bridging multiplication of the Church.
2. Study the Harvestime International Network courses entitled "*Biblical Management Principles*" and "*Mobilization Methodologies*" for additional teaching regarding organization of the Church.
3. Study the Harvestime *Legacy Bible Outline* on the book of Acts for a detailed study of the birth, multiplication, growth and development of the early Church.

All of these resources are available free at: <http://www.harvestime.org>

CHAPTER TEN

ESCHATOLOGY

Biblical Prophecy, The End-Times, Eternity

DEFINITION

Eschatology is the study of last things--events that will occur in the end-times. The word comes from the Greek word *eschaton* which refers to the end or final things. In theology, Eschatology specifically focuses on the study of the prophetic books of the Bible and Christ's prophetic teachings--primarily those prophecies that are yet unfulfilled. It includes study of the rapture, the Tribulation, the second coming, the Millennium, final judgment, and eternity. It focuses on the prophetic books in scripture and Christ's prophetic teaching.

The study of Eschatology is important because prophecy makes up a great amount of the biblical text. Eschatology also confirms the validity of God's Word as we witness prophesied events being fulfilled in detail. The study of Eschatology motivates believers to remain true to the faith, as it gives details of their eternal destiny with God.

There are some details about future events which are not revealed in God's Word and that which is revealed has been interpreted in different ways by theologians. It is not necessary to understand all the conflicting opinions regarding prophecy. Most of these interpretations center on the exact timing of certain prophetic events or specific details of these events.

What is important to foundations of the Christian faith is a general understanding of what the Bible says will happen in the future. Though some issues of Eschatology appear complex, the ultimate conclusion is that Christ will reign forever and believers will be with Him for all eternity. The following outline details the important events of Eschatological studies.

THE RAPTURE

The word "rapture" refers to a Latin term that means to be "caught up." The Bible does not use the word "rapture", but it speaks clearly of a time when believers in Jesus will be taken to be with Him in an instant.

The Bible teaches that the Lord will return to earth for believers. Jesus promised His followers:

...I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there ye may be also.
(John 14:2-3)

This event can take place at any time, and thus it is referred to as the imminent return of Jesus Christ.

Under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, the Apostle Paul provided details about Christ's return:

*But I would not have you to be ignorant, brethren, concerning them which are asleep, that ye sorrow not, even as others which have no hope. For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him. For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive and remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep. For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord. Wherefore comfort one another with these words.
(1 Thessalonians 4:13-18)*

From this passage we learn that:

- Christ Himself will return (verse 16).
- There will be a resurrection from the grave of those who were believers when they died (verse 16).
- There will be a rapture, which means "the act of taking a person from one place to another." Living believers will be taken from earth to meet Christ (verse 17).
- There will be a reunion between believers who have previously died, believers living at the time of Christ's return, and their Lord Jesus Christ (verse 17).

Some people believe the rapture will occur before the period of time known as the Tribulation and that believers will not have to experience any of this terrible time on earth. Others believe the rapture will happen midway through this period. Still others believe the rapture will happen at the end of the Tribulation. The different views of the timing of the rapture result from various interpretations of the prophetic information given in Scripture. What is most important is to know you are a true believer and will be ready to go with Jesus when He returns.

THE TRIBULATION

The Bible tells of a terrible time on earth which is called the Tribulation (Revelation 7:14 and Matthew 24:21-22). The Tribulation is also referred to as "the day of the Lord" (Isaiah 13:5); the "day of wrath" (Revelation 6:17); and "the time of Jacob's trouble" (Jeremiah 30:7).

The Tribulation will last for 42 months or 1,260 days (Daniel 9:24-27). It will be a very difficult time. There have been many difficult times in the world down through history, but three things will distinguish the Tribulation from all other times of trouble.

- First, it will be worldwide and not just local: Revelation 3:10.
- Second, people will realize the end of the world is near: Revelation 6:16.

- Third, the intensity of the trouble will be greater than ever before experienced: Matthew 24:4-14.

During the Tribulation there will be a series of judgments from God on those remaining in the world. These are described in Revelation chapters 6, 8-9, and 16 and Matthew 24:4-14. The major purposes of the Tribulation is to pour out judgment on wicked men and nations (Revelation 3:10; 6:15-17; 11:18; 14:10; 16:1; 19:1-2) and to prepare the nation of Israel to receive their Messiah (Deuteronomy 4:27-31; Jeremiah 30:7; Daniel 12:1; Revelation 7:1-8).

The Tribulation will immediately precede the Second Coming of Christ and the Millennium (Matthew 24:15-31 and Revelation 19:11-21).

THE SECOND COMING AND THE MILLENNIUM

After the Tribulation, Jesus will return to earth (His second coming), defeat the enemy, and rule the earth in righteousness (Zechariah 14:9; Daniel 7:14). The Millennium refers to the thousand year reign of Jesus on the earth. The city of Jerusalem will be the center of government (Isaiah 2:3) where Jesus will rule and reign (Daniel 7:14).

Here are some of the characteristics of the Millennium reign of Jesus:

- War is eliminated: Isaiah 2:4.
- The presence of God will be manifested: Ezekiel 37:24-28.
- People will have a personal relationship with God: Jeremiah 32:31-33.
- The Holy Spirit will be manifested: Joel 2:28-29.
- Believers will be Spirit-taught: Isaiah 11:9; Jeremiah 31:34.
- Righteousness will reign: Isaiah 11:3-5.
- There will be peace: Isaiah 35:10; 65:25.
- There will be great joy: Isaiah 35:10; 51:11; 65:18-19.
- There will be justice: Isaiah 65:20-23; Zechariah 14:17-19.
- The curse on the earth is reversed: Isaiah 11:6-8.
- Productivity will increase: Isaiah 35:1-2; Amos 9:13.
- There will be changes in the animal world: Isaiah 65:25; 11:6-8.

This period will end when Satan is freed and stages a final revolt against God (Revelation 20:7-9). Sadly, even after 1,000 years of God's reign, some people will openly oppose God and rebel (Zechariah 14:17-19). God will send fire from Heaven and end all opposition. Satan will be cast into the lake of fire for eternity (Revelation 20:10) and there will be final victory over Satan, demons, sin, evil world powers, and death (Revelation 20).

Here is a summary of the events associated with this period of time:

- The return of Christ: Rev 19:11-18.
- Satan bound from operating for 1000 years: Revelation 20:2-3.
- The marriage of the Lamb: Revelation 19:7-10.

- The Battle of Armageddon: Revelation 14:14-21; 16:16.
- A great earthquake: Revelation 16:18.
- The judgment of the nations: Matthew 25:31-46.
- The Antichrist and False Prophet cast into the lake of fire: Revelation 19:20-21.
- Jesus establishes His Millennial Kingdom: Revelation 20:1-6.
- Satan is released one last time: Revelation 20:7-9.
- There is a final rebellion: Revelation 20:7-9.
- Satan is cast into the lake of fire: Revelation 20:10.

Here is a summary comparing the rapture and the second coming of Jesus Christ:

	The Rapture	The Second Coming
Timing:	Can occur at any time. 1 John 2:28; 3:2	General signs precede it. Matthew 24:33
Believers' Involvement:	Jesus returns for believers. 1 Thessalonians 4	Jesus returns with believers. Revelation 19:8,14
Purpose:	Jesus catches up believers and returns with them to Heaven. 1 Thessalonians 4:17; John 14:3	Jesus defeats the enemy and establishes His Kingdom on earth. Zechariah 14:1-3; Revelation 19:15-16

FINAL JUDGMENT AND ETERNITY

All created beings will be judged by God. This is known as the time of final judgment. For detailed teaching on eternal judgment, see chapter ten of the Harvestime International Network course entitled *"Foundations Of Faith,"* available at <http://www.harvestime.org>

Judgment will be done on the basis on the Word of God and the outcome will separate all of mankind into two categories:

Unbelievers: Those who died as unbelievers will be resurrected to face judgment. Because they did not repent from sin and accept Jesus as Savior, they will be condemned to eternity in Hell (Revelation 20:12-15).

The Bible teaches that Hell was originally designed for Satan and his demons (Matthew 25:41; Revelation 20:10), but Hell is also the destination of those who reject Christ as Savior (Matthew 13:41,50; Revelation 20:11-15; 21:8). Hell is conscious torment where there is fire, weeping, and grinding of teeth (Matthew 13:50); there is no death and the fire is not quenched (Mark 9:48); and it is a place of fire and brimstone (Revelation 14:10). Hell is eternal (Revelation 14:11). It is called the second death (Revelation 20:14) and is reserved for those whose names are not written in the Book of Life (Revelation 20:15).

True believers: True believers will be judged on their works, not to determine their eternal destiny (Romans 8:1; John 5:24; 2 Corinthians 5:10). Those who repented from sin and accepted Jesus as Savior will spend eternity in Heaven in the presence of God (Revelation 21).

There are five specific rewards mentioned in Scripture, referred to as "crowns":

-A crown of rejoicing for those who won people to Christ: 1 Thessalonians 2:19.

-An incorruptible crown for those who conquered the flesh: 1 Corinthians 9:25.

-A crown of life for those who successfully endured trials: James 1:12.

-A crown of righteousness for those who loved and looked for His appearing:
2 Timothy 4:8.

-A crown of glory for feeding and ministering to the flock of God: 1 Peter 5:4.

The greatest reward, of course, will be eternal life in the presence of God.

Heaven is a real place as Jesus repeatedly claimed to have come "from Heaven" (John 6:41, 52); after His resurrection He ascended into Heaven; and someday He will return from Heaven (Acts 1:11; 1 Thessalonians 4:16). He is currently in Heaven preparing a place for believers (John 14:3).

In Heaven, believers will have resurrected bodies (Romans 8:17) and there will be no sin, sickness, or sorrow. There will be no more death, crying, or pain (Revelation 21:4). We will be forever in the presence of God (Revelation 22:3-5).

PROPHETIC BOOKS OF THE BIBLE

Harvestime International Network *Legacy Bible Outlines* provide notes for all of the prophetic books of the Bible. These outlines will enable you to study further on Eschatology. The books of Daniel and Revelation are especially relevant to Eschatology, and the outlines for these books include commentaries. Study these two books to expand your knowledge of eschatology.

Following is a summary of the prophetic books of the Bible. All of the outlines for these books are in the *Old Testament Legacy Bible Outlines* with the exception of the book of Revelation, which you will find in the *New Testament Legacy Bible Outlines*. All studies are available free at: <http://www.harvestime.org>

Isaiah: Warns of coming judgment against Judah because of their sin against God.

Jeremiah: Written during the later decline and fall of Judah. Told of the coming judgment and urged surrender to Nebuchadnezzar.

Lamentations: Jeremiah's lament (expression of sorrow) over the destruction of Jerusalem by Babylon.

Ezekiel: Warns first of Jerusalem's impending fall and then foretells its future restoration.

Daniel: The prophet Daniel was captured during the early siege of Judah and taken to Babylon. This book provides historic and prophetic teaching which is important in understanding Bible prophecy.

Hosea: Theme of this book is Israel's unfaithfulness, their punishment, and restoration by God.

Joel: Tells of the plagues which foreshadowed future judgment.

Amos: During a period of material prosperity but moral decay, Amos warned Israel and surrounding nations of God's future judgment on their sin.

Obadiah: God's judgment against Edom, an evil nation located south of the Dead Sea.

Jonah: The story of the prophet Jonah who preached repentance in Ninevah, capitol of the Assyrian empire. The book reveals God's love and plan of repentance for the Gentiles.

Micah: Another prophecy against Israel's sin. Foretells the birthplace of Jesus 700 years before the event happened.

Nahum: Tells of the impending destruction of Ninevah which had been spared some 150 years earlier through Jonah's preaching.

Habakkuk: Reveals God's plan to punish a sinful nation by an even more sinful one. Teaches that "the just shall live by faith."

Zephaniah: Judgment and restoration of Judah.

Haggai: Urges the Jews to rebuild the temple after a 15 year delay due to enemy resistance.

Zechariah: Further urging to complete the temple and renew spiritual commitment. Foretells Christ's first and second comings.

Malachi: Written after the return of God's people from exile, the purpose of this book is to ensure that the hearts of the Jews was right and that they were keeping God first in their lives.

Revelation: A revelation of end-time events.

CHRIST'S PROPHETIC TEACHINGS

Study the prophetic teachings of Jesus using the following outline which is arranged by subject.

The Second Coming Of Jesus Christ:

Matthew 24:6-47; 25:1-13; 26:64

Mark 2:20; 8:38; 13:7-36; 14:62

Jerusalem:

Matthew 5:34,35; 23:37-39; 24:2

Mark 13:2

Luke 13:34,35; 19:42-44; 21:20-24; 23:28-31

John 4:21

The Jews:

Matthew 8:11,12; 10:6; 11:16-19; 15:24,26; 21:31,32; 22:2-7

Mark 7:27

Luke 7:31-35; 21:24; 22:67,68

John 4:22; 7:19,21; 8:37-47,49; 9:41; 10:26,32; 18:20,36

The Scribes, Pharisees, And Sadducees:

Matthew 12:34; 15:7-9,14; 16:6; 23:2-7,13-15,25-27,29-36

Mark 7:6; 8:15; 12:38-40

Luke 11:39,40-44,46-52; 12:1; 20:46,47

John 5:42

The Gentiles:

Matthew 8:11; 21:43; 22:8-10; 24:14; 28:19

Mark 13:10; 16:15

Luke 13:29; 24:46,47

John 10:16

False Prophets And False Teachings:

Matthew 7:15-18,20; 24:4,5,11,23,24,26

Mark 13:5,6,21,22

Luke 6:39,43,44; 17:1,2,22,23; 21:8

John 10:1,8

SELF-TEST

1. Define Eschatology.

2. Why is the study of Eschatology important?

3. What does the study of Eschatology include?

4. What accounts for most of the differing interpretations of biblical prophecy?

5. Summarize what you learned about the rapture.

6. Summarize what you learned about the timing of the rapture.

7. Summarize what you learned about the Tribulation.

8. Summarize what you learned about the second coming and the Millennium.

9. Summarize what you learned about final judgment and eternity.

10. Which two books of the Bible are especially relevant to Eschatology?

11. Where will you find outlines on the prophetic books to further your study of Eschatology?

12. Write a short description of the following prophetic books.

Isaiah:

Jeremiah:

Lamentations:

Ezekiel:

Daniel:

Hosea:

Joel:

Amos:

Obadiah:

Jonah:

Micah:

Nahum:

Habakkuk:

Zephaniah:

Haggai:

Zechariah:

Malachi:

13. Using the subheadings and references listed under "Christ's Prophetic Teachings", summarize what you learned about the following topics upon which Jesus taught.

The Second Coming Of Jesus Christ: _____

Jerusalem: _____

The Jews: _____

The Scribes, Pharisees, And Sadducees: _____

The Gentiles: _____

False Prophets And False Teachings: _____

(Answers to tests are provided at the conclusion of the final chapter in this manual.)

SUPPLEMENTAL STUDIES

1. Study the Harvestime Legacy Bible Outline Series and commentaries on the books of Daniel and Revelation available free at <http://www.harvestime.org>
2. Study more on the resurrection and eternal judgment in chapters 8-10 of the Harvestime course entitled "*Foundations Of Faith*" available free at <http://www.harvestime.org>
3. Use the following guidelines for studying Biblical prophecy:

-Study prophecy "in the Spirit," not with your natural reasoning because "... *the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned*" (1 Corinthians 2:14).

-Accept that prophecy can be understood as it is written without changes, additions, or speculations. God gave prophecy because He wants you to know about future events, so begin with the attitude that you will be able to understand it. If there are things you don't understand, don't get discouraged and quit. Record your questions for future reflection and continue on with your study.

-Do not change literal meanings to symbolic meanings unless the text clearly indicates otherwise.

-Keep in mind the times and circumstances under which the prophet recorded God's message. Without knowledge of the historical background, expressions of that time may seem peculiar or difficult to understand.

-Remember that sometimes prophets describe future events as if they were continuous and successive, but there actually may be thousands of years between. This is called "the law of prophetic perspective," meaning that prophecy can be fulfilled in various stages. Seek answers to these questions:

-Has the prophecy been fulfilled or is it yet to be fulfilled?

-Is the prophecy conditional based upon peoples' response or is it unconditional?

-Does the prophecy have an immediate fulfillment, a future fulfillment, or both immediate and future?

-Keep in mind the "law of double reference." In some passages, two distinct meanings are indicated. For example, in Revelation 4:1 John is caught up into heaven in the Spirit to be given the Revelation. The double reference in this verse indicates the rapture of the Church.

-Study passages within their context, as many times the text itself interprets a prophetic vision or revelation. An example is Revelation 1:12-13 which is explained in 1:20. Also study each passage within the context of the total revelation of God's Word. Remember that no prophecy is of private interpretation (2 Peter 1:20), meaning it is not to be interpreted apart from the entire revelation of God's Word.

-Remember that *"All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works"* (2 Timothy 3:16-17). "All Scripture" includes the more difficult portions, like prophecy.

-Understand that Jesus Christ is central to all prophecy (Revelation 19:10 and Luke 24:27).

-Recognize that much prophecy is symbolic. Some symbols are explained, such as in Revelation 1:20; 4:5; and 5:8. Other symbols, such as those used in Revelation 2:7 and 4:7, can be understood through Old Testament prophecies. Other symbols are not explained--such as Revelation 2:17.

4. Study the following prophetic books using the Harvestime *Legacy Bible Outlines* available free at <http://www.harvestime.org>

- Isaiah
- Jeremiah
- Lamentations
- Ezekiel
- Daniel
- Hosea
- Joel
- Amos
- Obadiah
- Jonah
- Micah
- Nahum
- Habakkuk
- Zephaniah
- Haggai
- Zechariah
- Malachi
- Revelation

EPILOGUE

From beginning to end, the Bible reveals God's special purpose for the world. That purpose, formerly called a mystery, is revealed in the book of Ephesians:

Having made known unto us the mystery of His will, according to His good pleasure which He hath purposed in Himself: That in the dispensation of the fullness of times He might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in Him: In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of Him who worketh all things after the counsel of His own will. (Ephesians 1:9-11)

The mystery of God's plan, which is the unifying theme of the Bible, is the revelation of Jesus Christ as the Savior of sinful mankind. Jesus explained how the entire the Old Testament revelation centers on Him:

And He said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms concerning me. (Luke 24:44)

With this introduction, Jesus continued and "...*He opened their understanding that they might understand the scriptures*" (Luke 24:45). The key that Jesus gave to enable them to understand the Scriptures was the fact that its entire theme focused on Him:

...Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day: And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in His name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. And Ye are witnesses of these things. (Luke 24:46-4)

The Old and New Testaments both tell the story of Jesus. The Old Testament prepares us for His coming and the New Testament tells how it happened. Thus, the revelation of Jesus Christ is the central theme to the entire Bible and relates to all the subjects of study in Biblical theology.

Some theologians and philosophers of our time seem to think they are an intellectual match for God. They challenge and reject the Bible and express personal beliefs and biases that not only adversely influence modern culture, but secular education and the media as well. True Biblical theologians accept God's Word and cling to it as divine revelation. They are not intimidated by secular scholars, negative cultural values, godless education, or the biased media.

True Biblical theologians have had a supernatural experience with God--the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit--and a man with an experience is never at the mercy of a man who has only an argument.

ANSWERS TO SELF-TESTS

INTRODUCTION:

1. "Theology" comes from two Greek words, *theos* meaning "God" and *logos* meaning "the word about or the study of" God as He is revealed in the Scriptures. Simply defined, theology is the study of the Bible to discover what God has said about Himself, His purposes, and His plans.
2. Paterology: The study of God the Father.
3. Christology: The study of the Son, Jesus Christ.
4. Pneumatology: The study of the Holy Spirit.
5. Angelology: The study of angels.
6. Demonology: The study of Satan and demons.
7. Bibliology: The study of the Bible.
8. Harmartiology: The study of sin.
9. Soteriology: The study of salvation which is God's provision for sin.
10. Ecclesiology: The study of the Church of God.
11. Eschatology: The study of biblical prophecy, the end-times, and eternity.
12. Jesus Christ is the central theme of the Bible and Biblical theology.
13. Reasons for studying theology:
 - For personal spiritual growth and development.
 - To avoid doctrinal error by understanding the truth.
 - To enable you to explain Biblical truth to unbelievers.
 - To apply what you learn to your spiritual walk and ministry.

CHAPTER ONE: PATEROLOGY

1. Paterology comes from two Greek words which mean "father" and "word". When combined and used in terms of theology, they mean "the study of the Father".
2. Common subjects studied in Paterology include the existence of God, the Trinity of God, the attributes of God, the names of God, His sovereignty, and His purposes and plans.
3. Compare your summary to the discussion in this chapter on the following confirmations:
 - From Creation.
 - From History.
 - From Tradition.
 - From Experience.
 - From Revelation.
4. The Trinity of God means that the one true God is revealed in three distinct personalities of the Father, the Son Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit. They are one in essence or substance, three in subsistence. There is one God with three distinct personalities. The three persons of the Trinity of God are God the Father, Jesus Christ the Son, and the Holy Spirit.
5. Matthew 3:16-17; John 15:26; 1 Peter 4:14; Romans 8:2-3; 2 Corinthians 13:14; Ephesians 2:18; Acts 2:33.
6. The attributes of God discussed in this chapter are the following. God is:
 - Eternal: Meaning with no beginning and no ending.
 - A spirit: He is without flesh and blood, invisible to the natural eyes of man.
 - Sovereign: The greatest power in all the universe.
 - Omnipresent: He is present everywhere.
 - Omniscient: He knows all things.
 - Omnipotent: He is all powerful.
 - Unchanging: God does not change His person, nature, purpose, or plans.
 - Holy/righteous: God is sinless, absolutely pure.
 - Just: God is fair and impartial in judgment.
 - Faithful: God keeps His promises and is absolutely trustworthy.
 - Benevolent: God is good, kind, and desires your welfare.
 - Merciful: God shows continuous mercy to sinful mankind.
 - Gracious: God shows undeserved kindness to sinful man.
 - Loving: God is love.
 - Longsuffering: He does not immediately judge sin, but appeals to all men to repent and patiently waits for them to acknowledge their sins and turn to Him.
 - Wise: God shows deep understanding and keen discernment.
 - Infinite: God is not subject to natural and human limitations.

- 7.
- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Jehovah: | Means Lord. |
| Jehovah-Rapha: | "The Lord that healeth". |
| Jehovah-Nissi: | "The Lord our banner". |
| Jehovah-Shalom: | "The Lord our peace". |
| Jehovah-Ra'ah: | "The Lord my shepherd". |
| Jehovah-Tsidkenu: | "The Lord our righteousness". |
| Jehovah-Jireh: | "The Lord who provides". |
| Jehovah-Shammah: | "The Lord is there". |
| Elohim: | Means God and is used where the creative power of God is implied. |
| Father: | A spiritual Father. |
| Adonai: | Means Lord or Master. |
| El: | This is often used in combination with other words for God. |
| El Shaddai: | "The God who is sufficient for the needs of His people". |
| Eloham: | "The everlasting God". |
| El Elyon: | "Most high God, exalted above all other gods". |
8. The best statement of the sovereign “plan” of God is the summary in the Westminster Shorter Catechism: “The decrees of God are His eternal purpose, according to the counsel of His will, whereby, for His own glory, He hath foreordained whatsoever comes to pass.”
9. Yes, God knows the future, but this does not eliminate man's free will.
10. *According to the eternal purpose which He purposed in Christ Jesus our Lord...Having made known unto us the mystery of His will, according to His good pleasure which He hath purposed in Himself; That in the dispensation of the fullness of times, He might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in Heaven, and which are on earth, even in Him. (Ephesians 3:11;1:9-10)*
11. God's desire is that all people experience forgiveness of sins through Jesus Christ, be brought into right relationship with Him, and become part of the Kingdom of God.
12. *The Lord of hosts hath sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand. (Isaiah 14:24)*
- This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations. For the Lord of hosts hath purposed and who shall disannul it? and his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back? (Isaiah 14:26-27)*
13. See the discussion in this chapter on God's plan for individuals.
14. See the discussion in this chapter on God's plan for nations.

15. See the discussion in this chapter on God's plan for Jesus.
16. See the discussion in this chapter on God's plan for the Holy Spirit.
17. See the discussion in this chapter on God's plan for the Church.

CHAPTER TWO: CHRISTOLOGY

1. Christology is composed of the words *Christ*, referring to Jesus Christ and *ology*, meaning "the study of." Thus, the word "Christology" deals with the study of Jesus Christ. It is one of three areas related to the study of the Triune God which also includes Paterology (the study of God the Father) and Pneumatology (the study of the Holy Spirit).
2. Common topics studied in Christology include the preexistence of Christ; prophecies about Him; His humanity and deity; His attributes, names, and titles; His birth, early life, ministry, death, resurrection, ascension, and return; and the three offices He holds.
3. The study of Christology is important because Jesus is the unifying theme of all scripture, as revealed when *"...beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself" (Luke 24:27).*
4. Compare your answer to the discussion in this chapter on "The Preexistence of Christ".
5. The Old Testament prophecies reveal how, when, and where Jesus was to be born and many details about His life, ministry, death, and resurrection.
6.
 - The Messiah would be born in Bethlehem: Micah 5:2; Matthew 2:1; Luke 2:4-6.
 - The Messiah would be born of a woman: Genesis 3:15; Matthew 1:20; Galatians 4:4.
 - The Messiah would be born of a virgin: Isaiah 7:14; Matthew 1:22-23; Luke 1:26-31.
 - The Messiah would come from the line of Abraham: Genesis 12:3; 22:18; Matthew 1:1; Romans 9:5.
 - The Messiah would be a descendant of Isaac: Genesis 17:19; 21:12; Luke 3:34.
 - The Messiah would be a descendant of Jacob: Numbers 24:17; Matthew 1:2.
 - The Messiah would come from the tribe of Judah: Genesis 49:10; Luke 3:33; Hebrews 7:14.
 - The Messiah would be heir to King David's throne: 2 Samuel 7:12-13; Isaiah 9:7; Luke 1:32-33; Romans 1:3.
 - The Messiah's throne will be eternal: Psalm 45:6-7; Daniel 2:44; Luke 1:33; Hebrews 1:8-12.
 - He would be called Immanuel: Isaiah 7:14; Matthew 1:23.
 - He would be the Son of God: Psalm 2:7; Hebrews 1:5; 5:5.
 - He would spend time in Egypt: Hosea 11:1; Matthew 2:14-15.
 - A massacre of children would happen at His birthplace: Jeremiah 31:15; Matthew 2:16-18.

- A messenger would prepare the way for Him: Isaiah 40:3-5; Malachi 3:1; Matthew 11:10-13; Luke 3:3-6.
- He would be preceded by the ministry of Elijah: Malachi 4:5-6; Matthew 11:13-14.
- He would be rejected by His own people: Psalm 69:8; Isaiah 53:3; John 1:11; 7:5.
- He would be a prophet: Deuteronomy 18:15; Acts 3:20-22.
- He would be declared to be the Son of God: Psalm 2:7; Matthew 3:16-17.
- He would be called a Nazarene: Isaiah 11:1; Matthew 2:23.
- He would be called King: Psalm 2:6; Zechariah 9:9; Matthew 27:37; Mark 11:7-11.
- He would bring light: Isaiah 9:1-2; Matthew 4:13-16.
- He would teach using parables: Psalm 78:2-4; Isaiah 6:9-10; Matthew 13:10-15, 34-35.
- He would heal the brokenhearted: Isaiah 61:1-2; Luke 4:18-19.
- He would be a priest after the order of Melchizedek: Psalm 110:4; Hebrews 5:5-6.
- He would receive praise from the children: Psalm 8:2; Matthew 21:16.
- He would enter Jerusalem in triumph: Zechariah 9:9; Matthew 21:4-5; John 12:14-15.
- He would be hated without cause: Psalm 35:19.
- He would be betrayed: Psalm 41:9; Zechariah 11:12-13; Luke 22:47-48; Matthew 26:14-16.
- His disciples would scatter: Zechariah 13:7; Matthew 26:31,56; Mark 14:27,50.
- The betrayal funds would be used to buy a potter's field: Zechariah 11:12-13; Matthew 27:9-10.
- He would be falsely accused: Psalm 35:11; Mark 14:57-58.
- He would be silent before His accusers: Isaiah 53:7; Mark 15:4-5.
- He would be abused: Isaiah 50:6; Matthew 26:67; Psalm 69:4; John 15:24-25.
- He would be crucified with criminals: Isaiah 53:12; Matthew 27:38; Mark 15:27-28.
- His hands and feet would be pierced: Psalm 22:16; Zechariah 12:10; John 20:25-27.
- He would be offered vinegar to drink: Psalm 69:21; Matthew 27:34; John 19:28-30.
- He would be mocked: Psalm 22:7-8; Luke 23:35.
- He would bear our shame: Psalm 69:19; Matthew 27:28.
- Soldiers would gamble for His garments: Psalm 22:18; Luke 23:34; Matthew 27:35-36.
- He would be forsaken by God: Psalm 22:1; Matthew 27:46.
- He would pray for His enemies: Isaiah 53:12; Luke 23:34.
- He would be numbered with criminals: Isaiah 53:12; Luke 23:33.
- He would die by crucifixion: Isaiah 53:5-6;10; John 19:16.
- He would thirst: Psalm 69:3; John 19:28
- He would be stared at: Psalm 22:17; Matthew 27:36.
- He would commend His Spirit to God: Psalm 31:5; Luke 23:46.
- He would be the ultimate sacrifice for sin: Isaiah 53:5-12; Romans 5:6-8.
- His death would secure "many brethren": Hebrews 2:12.
- He would "lead captivity captive": Psalm 68:18; Ephesians 4:8-10.
- His bones would not be broken: Exodus 12:46; Psalm 34:20; John 19:33-36.
- His side would be pierced: Zechariah 12:10; John 19:34.
- Blood and water would flow from His body: Psalm 22:14; John 19:34.
- He would be buried with the rich: Isaiah 53:9; Matthew 27:57-60.

-He would be resurrected from the dead: Psalm 16:10; 49:15; Matthew 28:2-7; Acts 2:22-32.

-He would ascend to heaven: Psalm 24:7-10; Mark 16:19; Luke 24:51.

-He would be seated at God's right hand: Psalm 68:18; 110:1; Mark 16:19; Matthew 22:44.

7. In the New Testament, Jesus predicted His death and resurrection (Matthew 20:17-19; 1 Corinthians 15) and His ascension (Luke 24:46-53). First Thessalonians 4:13-18 speaks specifically of an unknown, future time at which the dead in Christ will rise first, followed by all living believers immediately ascending into the air to be with Jesus forever. The book of Revelation reveals that seven years of judgment will occur after the rapture, followed by the return of Jesus to earth with His followers to defeat the enemy. At that time, Jesus will fulfill His role as the Messiah and reign from His throne in Jerusalem for 1,000 years. This is known as the Millennial kingdom (Revelation 20:1-6). At the end of this time, one final rebellion will take place by Satan followed by final judgment. (For expanded studies, see the chapter on Eschatology on this manual.)
8. Compare your answer to the discussion in the section of this chapter entitled "The Humanity And Deity Of Jesus Christ".
9.

Omnipotent:	All powerful.
Omniscient:	Knows everything.
Omnipresent:	Present everywhere.
Eternal:	Has no beginning or end.
Unchangeable:	Remains the same.
Perfect:	Absolutely holy.
10. Jesus received His name:
 - By Birth: Jesus received His name by birth, through inheritance from His Father.
 - By Achievement: Jesus received His name by achievement because He conquered all the power of the enemy.
 - By Conferring: Jesus received His name by having it conferred upon Him.
11. The name "Jesus" means "Savior or deliverer" (Matthew 1:21).
12. The name Christ means "the anointed one" (John 3:34).
13. Jesus Christ was supernaturally conceived by the Holy Spirit and born of the virgin Mary (Matthew 1:23; Galatians 4:4) in fulfillment of Isaiah's prediction (Isaiah 7:14). John says that the Word--Jesus Christ--became flesh and that God thus "tabernacled" among us (John 1:1, 14). God became a man in order to redeem His creation from sin and fulfill the Davidic covenant as the promised King (Luke 1:31-33). In His role as Lord and King He reveals God to men (John 1:18); saves sinners (Galatians 1:4); destroys the works of

the devil (1 John 3:8); judges mankind (Acts 17:31); brings all things in creation into submission to God (1 Corinthians 15:20-28; Ephesians 1:10-11); and intercedes for believers (Romans 8:34).

14. Jesus was circumcised according to Jewish law and presented at the temple (Luke 2:21-22). He lived in Bethlehem as a baby, Egypt for possibly a year, and was raised in Nazareth. His childhood was characterized by His growth in wisdom, stature, and favor with God and man (Luke 2:4-52). He was subject to His parents (Luke 2:49-51), and was aware of His Heavenly Father's business (Luke 2:49). His trade as a young man was a carpenter.
15. The ministries of Jesus include:
 - Revealing God to mankind.
 - Redeeming man from sin.
 - Destroying the works of the Devil.
 - Judging mankind.
 - Bringing all things in creation into submission to God.
 - Interceding for believers.
16. Matthew 26-27; Mark 14-15; Luke 22-23; and John 18-19.
17.
 - Jesus was betrayed by a friend: Psalm 41:9.
 - He was betrayed for 30 pieces of silver: Zechariah 11:12-13.
 - Jesus was abused: Isaiah 50:6.
 - Jesus was silent before His accusers: Isaiah 53:7.
 - Jesus would be crucified for our sins: Isaiah 53:4-6.
 - His crucifixion was described by Zechariah: Zechariah 12:10.
 - Jesus would be numbered with the transgressors: Isaiah 53:12.
 - Jesus would be buried in a rich man's tomb: Isaiah 53:9.
18. Matthew 26-27; Mark 14-15; Luke 22-23; John 18-19.
19.
 - To reconcile mankind to God: Romans 5:9-11; 2 Corinthians 5:18-19; Ephesians 2:14-16; Colossians 1:20-22
 - To bear our sins: Hebrews 9:28; 1 Peter 2:24
 - To take away sins: John 1:29; Hebrews 9:26; 10:4,10-12; 1 John 3:5
 - To forgive us of sins: Ephesians 1:7; Colossians 1:14; 2:13-14; 1 John 1:9
 - To give us eternal life: John 3:14-16; 10:10, 27-29; 1 John 5:6-13
 - To do the will of God: Hebrews 10:7-14
 - To save sinners: Matthew 9:13; Luke 19:10; 1 Timothy 1: 15
 - To fulfill the law: Matthew 5:17; Romans 10:4
 - To redeem those under the law: Galatians 3:13-14, 24; 4:4-5; 1 Peter 1:18-19
 - To demonstrate God's righteousness: Romans 3:24-26; 2 Corinthians 5:21

- To manifest God's love: John 3:16; Romans 5:8; 1 John 3:16; 4:9-18
 - To bring lost mankind to God: Hebrews 2:9-10; 1 Peter 3:18
 - To destroy the devil's power: Hebrews 2:14-15
 - To fulfill the functions of a faithful high priest: Hebrews 2:17-18; 4:14-16
 - To give His life as a ransom: Matthew 28:28; 1 Timothy 2:5-6
20. Matthew 28, Mark 16, Luke 24, and John 20.
21. Through His resurrection from the dead, Jesus gained victory over physical death. Those who become part of the Kingdom of God may experience physical death, but they will also experience resurrection from the dead as He did. Because our King is eternal, we are part of an eternal Kingdom and have eternal life.
22. Compare your answers to the passages listed:
- Hosea 6:1-2.
 - Psalm 16:10.
 - Matthew 28, Mark 16, Luke 24, John 20.
 - Matthew 28:5-7; Mark 16:5-7; Luke 24:4-7; John 20:12.
 - 1 Corinthians 15.
23. -His first appearance was to Mary Magdalene, on resurrection morning: Mark 16:9; John 20:10-18.
- He appeared to the women returning from the tomb: Matthew 28:9-10.
 - He appeared to two disciples on the road to Emmaus: Luke 24:13-32; Mark 16:12-13.
 - He appeared to Peter in Jerusalem: Luke 24:34; 1 Corinthians 15:5.
 - He appeared to His disciples (Thomas absent): Luke 24:36-43; John 20:19-23.
 - Jesus appeared again to His disciples with Thomas present: John 20:24-29.
 - He appeared to seven disciples on the shore of the Sea of Galilee: John 21:1-24.
 - Jesus was seen by 500 believers at one time: 1 Corinthians 15:5-7.
 - He appeared to James: 1 Corinthians 15:7.
 - He appeared on the Mount of Olives, and then ascended into Heaven: Matthew 28:18-20; Luke 24:50-53.
 - He was seen by Paul on the road to Damascus: Acts 9:3-6; 1 Corinthians 15:8.
 - He was seen ascending into Heaven: Acts 1:3-11.
24. The ascension of Jesus to Heaven is recorded in Matthew 28:16-20, Mark 16:19-20, Luke 24:50-53, and Acts 1:1-11.
25. Jesus was exalted to the right hand of God (Psalm 110:1; Acts 2:34-35) and currently reigns over the universe (Ephesians 1:20-22a). He is head over all things pertaining to the Church (Ephesians 1:22-23; 1 Peter 3:22) and has sent the Holy Spirit as He promised (Acts 2:33). He is exalted at the right hand of God where He intercedes for all true believers (Hebrews 7:25).

26. -Those who sleep with Jesus will come with Him.
 -The Lord will descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God.
 -The dead in Christ shall rise first.
 -Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air.
 -So shall we ever be with the Lord.
27. The three offices of Christ are:
- Prophet: In Deuteronomy 18:18 Moses predicted that God would send another prophet like him to the people of Israel. John and Peter both witness that Jesus is that prophet (John 6:14; 7:40; Acts 3:22-24). Christ functioned as a prophet through revelation from God and was, in human form, the revelation from God (John 1:18).
- Priest: Jesus Christ also functioned in the office of priest. The prophet was God's representative to the people. The priest was the peoples' representative before God. Instead of offering Levitical sacrifices for sin, Jesus offered himself as the final sacrifice, once and for all, for all the sins of mankind. As a priest, He has entered the holy of holies in Heaven and opens the way for us to access the presence of God. Romans 8:34 and Hebrews 7:25 reveal His priestly role as He makes intercession for us.
- King: Jesus Christ fulfilled the office of King. In contrast to the greatest of Israelite kings, Jesus rules over the entire world (Ephesians 1:20-23). When He returns to earth He will assume His rightful place as "the King of Kings" (Revelation 19:16).

CHAPTER THREE: PNEUMATOLOGY

1. The word "Pneumatology" comes from the words *pneuma* (meaning wind or spirit) and *ology* (study of). In theology, Pneumatology is the study of what the Bible teaches about the Holy Spirit.
2. Pneumatology includes teaching on the identity of the Holy Spirit; receiving the Holy Spirit; the Baptism of the Holy Spirit; the ministry of the Holy Spirit; and gifts and fruit of the Holy Spirit.
3. The study of Pneumatology is of tremendous importance to Christians because the Holy Spirit plays a vital role in the life of each believer. Studying the role and work of the Holy Spirit also protects believers from inaccurate teachings.
4. See the discussion under the "Deity Of The Holy Spirit" in this chapter.

5. The Holy Spirit is:
 - Omnipresent: He is present everywhere.
 - Omniscient: He knows all things.
 - Omnipotent: He is all powerful.
 - Eternal: He has no beginning or end.
 - Holy: He is righteous.
 - Truthful: The Father, Son, and Spirit all bear witness to the truth.

6. The Holy Spirit:
 - Has a mind.
 - Searches out the human mind.
 - Has a will.
 - Speaks.
 - Loves.
 - Intercedes.
 - Has emotions.

7. Titles that reflect the position and function of the Holy Spirit include:
 - The Spirit Of God.
 - The Spirit Of Christ.
 - The Eternal Spirit.
 - The Spirit Of Truth.
 - The Spirit Of Grace.
 - The Spirit Of Life.
 - The Spirit Of Glory.
 - The Spirit Of Wisdom And Revelation.
 - The Comforter.
 - The Spirit Of Promise.
 - The Spirit Of Holiness.
 - The Spirit Of Faith.
 - The Spirit Of Adoption.

8. Emblems that represent the Holy Spirit include:
 - The Dove: Represents approval, peace, and purity.
 - Oil: Oil indicates light, healing, and anointing for service. All of these are given to a believer through the Holy Spirit.
 - Water: Water signifies the new life and cleansing from sin that the Holy Spirit brings to the believer.
 - A seal: A seal is a special mark indicating ownership. It also indicates a finished transaction. The Holy Spirit has sealed believers as belonging to God. It indicates their salvation is a finished work.

-Wind: The wind represents the power of the Holy Spirit. It produces life, separates the wheat from the chaff, and fans dying coals to set them ablaze again.

-Fire: Fire symbolizes the presence and approval of the Lord. It provides protection and guidance, purifies, and represents judgment.

-A pledge: The Holy Spirit is the "first installment"--like a down payment--of future glory.

9. The Holy Spirit's ministries include:

-Creation: The Spirit was present and active at the time of creation.

-The Scriptures: The Holy Spirit ministers in regards to the Word by revelation, inspiration, and illumination.

-Israel: The Spirit came upon the leaders of Israel; came upon their places of worship; guided them to the promised land; and will come upon them during the Tribulation and the Millennium.

-Satan: The Holy Spirit is the restraining spiritual force that limits the power of Satan.

-Jesus: Jesus was conceived, anointed, sealed, led, empowered, and filled by the Spirit. Jesus was also troubled in the Spirit, rejoiced in the Spirit, was offered up by the Spirit and raised in resurrection power by the Spirit. He also commissioned His disciples through the Spirit.

-Sinners: The Spirit reproves the world of sin, righteousness, and judgment, and draws men to salvation.

-The Church: The Holy Spirit formed the Church; inspires its worship; directs its missionary activities; selects its ministers; anoints its preachers; guides its decisions; and baptizes it with power.

-Believers: The Holy Spirit convicts, regenerates, sanctifies, baptizes, dwells within, strengthens, unites, and intercedes, guides, demonstrates love to and through the believer. He conforms believers to the image of Christ, reveals truth, teaches, gives assurance of salvation and liberty; comforts, quickens, speaks to and through the believer. He also demonstrates God's power through them. He inspires their worship, empowers them for witnessing, and gives them spiritual gifts and fruit.

10. Matthew 3:11; Mark 1:8; Luke 3:16; John 1:33; Acts 1:5; 11:16; 1 Corinthians 12:13.
11. Male and female, young and old were to be included in this outpouring of the Holy Spirit. They were to prophesy, dream dreams, and see visions. God's Spirit was to empower both servants (men) and handmaidens (women).
12. This passage reveals that the promise of the Holy Spirit was:
 - A national promise: "Unto you" (the Jewish people).
 - A generational promise: "Your children."
 - A universal promise: "To all that are afar off."
13. The common manifestation in all three was that those who received the baptism of the Spirit spoke with other tongues.
 - The day of Pentecost: Acts 2:2-4.
 - At the house of Cornelius: Acts 10:44-46.
 - The converts at Ephesus: Acts 19:6.
14. The sign of "tongues" can be languages known to man (Acts 2:7-8) and unknown tongues (1 Corinthians 14:2).
15. A spiritual gift is a supernatural ability given by the Holy Spirit to a believer to enable them to minister as part of the Body of Christ.
16. The leadership gifts of the Holy Spirit include apostles, prophets, evangelists, pastors, and teachers. Speaking gifts of the Holy Spirit include prophecy, teaching, exhortation, the word of wisdom, and the word of knowledge. Serving gifts of the Holy Spirit include serving, helps, leadership, administration, giving, showing mercy, discerning spirits, faith, and hospitality. Sign gifts of the Holy Spirit include tongues, interpretation, miracles, and healing.
17. According to Ephesians 4:12-15, the purposes of the gifts of the Holy Spirit are to:
 - Perfect the saints.
 - Promote the work of the ministry.
 - Edify Christ and the Church.
18. The objectives or goals of spiritual gifts are that we will:
 - Become united in the faith.
 - Develop our knowledge of Christ.
 - Develop in perfection, with Christ as our model.
 - Become stable, not deceived by false doctrines.
 - Mature spiritually in Christ.
19. 1 Peter 4:10 and 1 Corinthians 12:7,11.

20. The main passages identifying spiritual gifts are Romans 12:1-8; 1 Corinthians 12:1-31; Ephesians 4:1-16; and 1 Peter 4:7-11.
21. The purposes and objectives of the Holy Spirit in Ephesians 4:12-15 have not yet been fulfilled. The saints still need to be perfected, the Gospel still needs to be extended to the ends of the earth, and Christ and the Church need to be edified. God would not give spiritual gifts for these purposes and objectives and then remove them without these things being accomplished.
22. The fruit of the Holy Spirit refers to the nature of the Spirit revealed in the life of the believer, spiritual qualities which should be evident in the lives of all Christians. The gifts of the Holy Spirit are for power. The fruit of the Holy Spirit is for character in the life of a believer.
23. But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance: against such there is no law (Galatians 5:22-23).

CHAPTER FOUR: ANGELOLOGY

1. The term Angelology comes from two Greek terms--*aggelos*, meaning "messenger" or "angel" and *logos* meaning "word," "matter," or "thing." In Christian theology the term refers to the study of the biblical doctrine of angels.
2. The study of Angelology includes their origin, organization, classification, attributes and ministry.
3. The word "angel" means messenger.
4. Angels were created by God (Psalms 148:2, 5; Colossians 1:16).
5. Believers (Hebrews 1:14).
6. Good angels--the angels of God. Evil angels--the angels of Satan also known as demons.
7. The organization of the invisible world is described in terms of thrones, dominions, principalities, and powers (Colossians 1:16 and Ephesians 3:10). We are not given details of this structure. We know that they sometimes function in large companies (Psalms 68:17; Matthew 26:53) and that they are innumerable (Hebrews 12:22).
8. Messengers: This class of angels is most likely the largest in number. These are the angels composing the innumerable group, visualized by Daniel (Daniel 7:10), who carry out the will of God in Heaven and earth. They interpret God's will, protect, provide guidance, bring answers to prayer, announce, warn, instruct, bring judgment, encourage, sustain, deliver, and intercede on behalf of believers.

Elect Angels: Only one reference is made to elect angels in 1 Timothy 5:21. There is no further information given about this group.

Cherubim: This classification of angels is first mentioned in Genesis 3:24 in relation to the expulsion of Adam and Eve from Eden. They are also mentioned as part of the ark of the covenant (Exodus 25:18-22). Ezekiel mentions these beings and describes them as having four appearances: The face of a lion, the face of an ox, the face of a man, and the face of an eagle (Ezekiel 1:3-28; 10:22). This symbolism of the cherubim suggests they are the living creatures surrounding the throne of God in Revelation 4:6. They appear to be the highest order of angels, the guardians of God. The two cherubim placed on the mercy seat of the ark are called the “cherubim of glory” (Hebrews 9:5). They were placed one at each end of the mercy-seat, with wings stretched upward, and their faces “toward each other and toward the mercy-seat.” They were anointed with holy oil, like the ark itself and the other sacred furniture. It was here that God manifested himself on earth in Old Testament times (1 Samuel 4:4; Psalm 80:1; Ezekiel 1:26, 28).

Seraphim: This group is mentioned in Isaiah 6:2,6. Their position is above the throne of God in contrast to the position of the cherubim who surround His throne. The duty of these angels seems to be to lead Heaven in the worship of God. They are represented as standing above the King as He sat upon his throne, ready to minister unto Him. Their form appears to have been human, with the addition of wings.

Living Creatures: This group of angels are mentioned in Ezekiel 1-10 and John in Revelation 4:6,8; 5:6. This title presents these angels as manifesting the fullness of divine life and their chief ministry appears to be worship of God. They are distinguished from the other angels (Revelation 15:7); they join the elders in a “new song” (Revelation 5:8, 9); they warn of divine justice (Isaiah 6:3-5); and deliver the commission to those who execute it (Ezekiel 10:2, 7). They are also with the elders and the hundred and forty-four thousand who sing the new song (Revelation 14:3), and with the Church in the overthrow of her enemies (Revelation 19:4).

9. -Michael: Michael the archangel is mentioned in Daniel 10:13,21; 12:1; Jude 9; and Revelation 12:7. He is the only angel who is called an archangel. He is represented as having charge over an army of angels in Revelation 12:7 and is said to be the prince of the people of Israel in Daniel 10:13,21; 12:1.

-Gabriel: The meaning of his name is "mighty one." He is mentioned in Daniel 8:16; 9:21; and in Luke 1:19,26. He is always used to deliver an important message from God. It is Gabriel who interpreted the vision for Daniel in 8:16; 9:21 and who announced the birth of John and Jesus Luke 1:19,26.

10. -Angels of the seven churches: Revelation 1:20
-Four angels who control the winds: Revelation 1:7
-Seven angels who stand before God: Revelation 8:2
-Seven angels who administer the seven last plagues: Revelation 15:1,7

- Twenty-four elders (these may be angelic beings): Revelation 4 and 5
11.
 - Are spirits: Hebrews 1:14
 - Are sexless: Luke 20:34-36
 - Do not reproduce: Mark 12:25
 - Are immortal: Matthew 22:28-30
 - Have both visible and invisible forms: Numbers 22:22-35
 - Appear with the likeness of human form when necessary: Genesis 19:1-22; 18:2,4,8
 - Have emotions: Luke 15:1-10
 - Have appetites: Genesis 18:8
 - Are glorified beings: Luke 9:26
 - Are intelligent: 2 Samuel 14:20
 - Are meek: Jude 9
 - Are powerful: Psalms 103:20; 2 Peter 2:11
 - Have no need to rest: Revelation 4:8
 - Travel at an unrecorded speed: Revelation 8:13; 9:1
 - Speak different languages: 1 Corinthians 13:1
 - Are innumerable: Luke 2:13; Hebrews 12:22; Psalms 68:17; Mark 1:13; Revelation 5:19
 - Are immortal: Luke 20:34-36
 - Do not marry or have children: Luke 20:34-36
 - Are obedient: Psalms 103:20
 - Are holy: Revelation 14:10; Mark 8:38
 - Are reverent: Their highest activity is the worship of God. Nehemiah 9:6; Philippians 2:9-11; Hebrews 1:6
 - Are stronger than man, powerful but not omnipotent: Psalm 103:20; 2 Peter 2:11
 - Can be visible or invisible: Numbers 22:22; Hebrews 13:2
 - Are able to ascend and descend to and from Heaven: Genesis 28:12; John 1:51
 12. The ministry of angels in Heaven includes:
 - Worship: Revelation 4:8; 5:11-12; Isaiah 6:3; Psalms 103:20; 148:1-2
 - Standing ready to do God's will: Psalms 103:20-21
 - Ministering to the godly who have died in Christ Jesus: Jude 9; Luke 16:22
 - Representing children in a special way: Matthew 18:10
 - Rejoicing over those who accept the Gospel: Luke 15:10
 13. The ministry of angels on earth includes:
 - Ruling nations: Daniel 10
 - Ministering to believers in times of testing: Matthew 4:11
 - Strengthening believers: Luke 22:43
 - Interpreting God's will for men: Zechariah 1:9; Daniel 7:16
 - Guarding believers: Matthew 18:10.
 - Guiding believers: Acts 8:26

- Bringing judgment on individuals and nations: Acts 12:23; Genesis 19:3; 2 Samuel 24:16; Revelation 16:1
 - Bringing answers to prayer: Daniel 9:21-22
 - Announcing: Luke 1:11-20; Matthew 1:20, 21
 - Warning: Matthew 2:13
 - Instructing: Matthew 28:2-6; Acts 10:3-6; Daniel 4:13-17
 - Encouraging: Acts 27:23; Genesis 28:12
 - Revealing: Acts 7:53; Galatians 3:19; Hebrews 2:2; Daniel 9:21-27; Revelation 1:1
 - Sustaining: Matthew 4:11; Luke 22:43
 - Preserving: Genesis 16:7; 24:7; Exodus 23:20; Revelation 7:1
 - Protecting: Psalms 91:11
 - Delivering: Numbers 20:16; Psalms 34:7; Isaiah 63:9; Daniel 3:28; 6:22; Genesis 48:16; Matthew 26:53; Acts 12:1-19
 - Destroying: Acts 12:20-23
 - Interceding: Zechariah 1:12; Revelation 8:3,4
 - Executing warfare in behalf of believers: Exodus 33:2
 - Being active in evangelism: Acts 10:1-3,5; 8:25
 - Empowering our worship: Psalm 148:2
 - Escorting us in death: Luke 16:22; 1 Corinthians 15:26
14. The future activities of angels will include:
- Participating in the return of Jesus: 1 Thessalonians 4:16
 - Gathering the elect: Matthew 24:31
 - Warning and preaching during the tribulation: Revelation 14:6-9
 - Separating the wicked from the righteous: Matthew 13:39 and 49
 - Executing judgments: Revelation 8,9, and 16
 - Binding Satan: Revelation 20
15. -Do not worship them.
 -Reject angels preaching "another gospel".
 -Do not provoke the angels.

CHAPTER FIVE: DEMONOLOGY

1. Demonology, in Christian theology, is the study of Satan and demons. It includes the study of such topics as the origin of Satan, his former position, his fall, results of his sin, his present location, his activities and attributes, and his names. It also includes the original position and fall of demons, their attributes, their names, the organization of demonic forces, their activities, and the final destination of Satan and demons.
2. Satan was originally created by God (John 1:3; Colossians 1:16).
3. God does not create evil. Satan was perfect when he was originally created by God, but was given a free will to choose good or evil (Ezekiel 28:15).

4. Ezekiel 28:12-17. When Satan was originally created, he was an angel of God. He was one of the Cherubim class of angels, holy, wise, beautiful, and perfect. He was the leader among the cherubs and is called a "guardian" or "covering" cherub. His name was originally Lucifer which means "light bearer" (Isaiah 14:12). He was decked with precious stones set in gold (Ezekiel 28:13; Exodus 28:15-11). He was given a position on God's holy mountain and apparently led in worship (Ezekiel 28:13).
5. Isaiah 14:12-15 and Ezekiel 28:17.
6. Satan's fall from his angelic position occurred because of pride and rebellion.
7.
 - I WILL ascend unto Heaven.
 - I WILL exalt my throne above the angels of God.
 - I WILL sit also upon the mountain of the congregation.
 - I WILL ascend above the heights of the clouds.
 - I WILL be like the Most High.
8. Satan desired to occupy the abode of God; equal recognition; desired to rule the angelic host and the earth; wanted God's glory; and desired to possess both heaven and earth.
9. The results of Satan's sin included:
 - Banishment from heaven.
 - Corruption of character.
 - Perversion of power.
 - Destined to the lake of fire.
 - Defection of other angels of God.
 - Entrance of sin in the universe.
10. Satan, in spirit form, is present in the world (Job 1:7; 1 Peter 5:8), but he is not omnipresent, which means he cannot be every place in the world at one time as God can.
11. Satan's activities are always directed against God, His plan, and His people. He will attack you in the areas of your worship of God, the Word of God, your Christian walk, and your work for God.
12. Unlike God, Satan is not omniscient (knowing all things). Satan is not omnipotent (all powerful). Satan is intelligent, subtle, emotional, powerful, deceitful, fierce, cruel, and deceptive.
13. Satan is like a roaring lion wanting to devour you. Do not give place to him.
14. God originally created all of the angels, some of which later became demons.
15. Demons were originally like the other angels of God with the same attributes and positions as the good angels.

16. When Satan rebelled against God, a portion of the angels participated in his rebellion. God cast them out of Heaven, along with Satan. They were no longer good spiritual beings (angels), but became evil spiritual beings (demons).
17. One group is actively opposing God and His people on earth. Another is confined in chains. There are confined demons and active demons.
18. Satan, who is called the "prince" of devils (Matthew 12:24).
19. They are spirits, can appear visibly, can speak, believe, exercise their wills, demonstrate intelligence, have emotions, have recognition, have supernatural strength and presence, are eternal, have their own doctrine, and are totally evil.
20. Demons are called evil spirits, unclean spirits, devils, and the devil's angels.
21. Principalities: A principality is the territory or jurisdiction of a prince. Satan has placed a prince over each principality. The prince of the power of Persia is mentioned in Daniel 10. This is how Satan works on a national level influencing governments and nations.

Powers and rulers of darkness of this world: These two categories of demons are at work in the social, political, and cultural systems of the world.

Spiritual wickedness in high places: High places in the Old Testament were where worship occurred. This is how Satan works in the religious structures of the world.

22. They are united: In the case of the demon possessed man recorded in Luke 8:30 the demons were united in their purpose, which was possession of the man. The same is true in Matthew 12:45 and in the case of Mary Magdalene who had seven demons (Luke 16:9). Jesus spoke of the unity of demonic powers (Matthew 12:26).

They have different degrees of wickedness: This is illustrated by the demon who said he would return with other evil spirits (Matthew 12:43-45).

They can change their functions: The demon in 1 Kings 22:21-23 declared he would be a lying spirit. This indicates he was not one previously for he said "I will be...".

They are of different kinds: There are three kinds of demons that attack the body, soul, and spirit of man: Evil or unclean spirits, spirits of infirmity, and seducing spirits.

23. They are active on earth under the direction of Satan. Their activities are always directed against God, His plan, and His people. They affect individuals, governments, nations, and the world system. They promote rebellion and slander both God and mankind. They promote idolatry, false doctrines, and blind men and women to the truth of the Gospel. These demons attack unbelievers, driving them to commit terrible evil acts, to murder,

injure, commit suicide, etc. They affect the mind with emotional problems and the body with physical infirmities. Demons attack believers by temptation, deception, depression, and oppression. They try to keep you in bondage to bad habits and fear. They accuse and slander you, create division among the people of God, and attack your body. Demons are used by Satan to attack the Word of God, your worship of God, your walk with God, and your work for God.

24. Hell--the lake of fire.

CHAPTER SIX: BIBLIOLOGY

1. Bibliology comes from the Greek word *biblos* meaning "the books". It refers to the study of the Bible as the written Word of the one true and living God.
2. The word "Scripture" is also used to refer to God's Word. This word comes from a Latin word which means "writing."
3. The topics studied in Bibliology include revelation, inspiration, inerrancy, canonicity, interpretation, illumination, application, and structure of the Word of God, as well as its unity and diversity, purposes, and various versions, translations, and paraphrases.
4. The word "revelation" means to unveil or uncover. Revelation is the process whereby God makes Himself known to mankind through scripture, Jesus Christ, miracles, visions, dreams, creation, etc.
5. Inspiration is the process by which God used human authors to record His Words through Spirit-inspired writing. Verbal inspiration of the Word refers to every word being inspired. Plenary inspiration refers to the entire Bible being inspired, not just those parts that speak to issues of faith and practice.
6. Inerrancy of the Word is the belief that the scriptures are without error, whether they refer to theological, geographical, or historical issues.
7. Canonicity refers to the Church's recognition of the divine origin and authority of the sixty-six books of the Bible.
8. Interpretation is the way the Word of God is understood.
9. You should approach the Word without any presuppositions, traditions, or cultural influences. You must understand what the author meant and how it applies to your life.
10. Illumination refers to the work of the Spirit that enables a born again believer to understand and interpret the Word of God.

11. Applying the Word means to allow the Bible to speak to you personally, educating, encouraging, convicting, and guiding your life.
12. Old and New Covenants.
13. Old and New Testaments.
14. 66 books.
15. Law, history, poetry, prophecy.
16. Gospels, history, epistles, prophecy.
17. The milk of the Word and the meat of the Word. The milk of the Word is the basic truth that is easily understood. The meat of the word refers to the deeper teachings of God's Word which bring spiritual maturity.
18. Logos, which refers to the total utterance of God. It is the complete revelation of what God has said.
19. Rhema, which refers to a specific saying of God that applies to a special situation.
20. The Bible is united in content and theme.
21. Diversity means that the Bible has variety.
22. Most of the Old Testament was written in Hebrew except for parts of the books of Daniel and Nehemiah which were written in Aramaic. The New Testament was written in Greek.
23. Versions are translations of the original manuscripts. The word "version" means a Bible written in a language different from those in which God's Word was originally written. There are two main types of versions of the Bible: Translations and paraphrases.
24. A translation is an effort to express what the Greek, Hebrew, and Aramaic words actually say. It gives as nearly as possible a literal word-by-word translation. Extra words are inserted only when it is necessary in order for the reader to understand the meaning.
25. A paraphrase does not attempt to translate word-for-word. It translates thought-by-thought. A paraphrase is a restatement of the meaning of a passage. Paraphrase versions are easier to read and understand because they are written in modern vocabulary and grammar, but they are not an exact translation of God's Word.

26. The Word of God:

- Is profitable for doctrine, reproof, correction, and instruction: 2 Timothy 3:16-17
- Brings belief in the Gospel message: Acts 4:4
- Cleanses: John 15:3; Ephesians 5:26
- Brings eternal life, if we hear and believe it: John 5:24
- Is the basis for eternal judgment: John 12:48
- Is used to cast out unclean spirits: Matthew 8:16; Luke 4:36
- Is followed by miraculous signs and convinces people of the truth of the Gospel: Mark 16:20
- Gives assurance of salvation: 1 John 1:2-6
- Brings the born again experience: 1 Peter 1:23; Psalms 119:41
- Bears record of the truth of the Gospel: 1 John 5:7
- Sanctifies the believer: 1 Timothy 4:5
- Gives hope: Psalms 130:5; 119:49,81
- Brings healing: Psalms 107:20
- Keeps you from the path of the destroyer: Psalms 17:4
- Is spirit and life: John 6:63
- Brings joy and rejoicing: Jeremiah 15:16
- Increases faith: Romans 10:17
- Comforts: 1 Thessalonians 4:18, Psalms 119:50,52
- Brings spiritual nourishment: 1 Timothy 4:6
- Brings answered prayer: John 15:7
- Is the key to success: Joshua 1:8
- Blesses, if we hear and keep it: Luke 11:28
- Brings blessings when it is kept and curses when it is not: Deuteronomy 28
- Is a weapon in the time of temptation: Matthew 4
- Converts the soul: Psalms 19:7
- Makes wise the simple: Psalms 19:7
- Enlightens: Psalms 19:8
- Warns: Psalms 19:11
- Brings great reward: Psalms 19:11
- Permits access to Heaven: Revelation 22:14
- Brings the blessing of walking in righteousness: Psalms 119:1-3
- Makes you wiser than your enemies, teachers, and the ancients: Psalms 119:98-104
- Quickens: Psalms 119:25
- Strengthens: Psalms 119:28
- Is the basis of His mercy: Psalms 119:58
- Brings delight: Psalms 119:92
- Gives the simple understanding: Psalms 119:130,104,169
- Delivers: Psalms 119:170

27. Because the Word of God is so important to the eternal destiny of all mankind and because Jesus commanded it, believers have a responsibility to make it known to the world. God puts His Word in you so you can speak it to others. If you are taught in

God's Word, then you have a responsibility to teach others. You are to preach the Word throughout the world. You are not to speak your own words, but His words. You are not to be ashamed of the Word and you are to teach the Word to your children.

CHAPTER SEVEN: HARMARTIOLOGY

1. Harmartiology comes from the Greek word *hamartos* meaning sin.
2. The biblical definitions of sin, the origin of sin, how sin was introduced into the world, man and the basic sin nature, the solution to the sin problem, the judgment and punishment of sin, and the removal of sin at the end of time.
3. -Sin is defined as "missing the mark" of God's righteousness, through transgression of His laws or rebellion against His rule.

-Wickedness means to have an evil mind-set to do mischief. It is a mental disregard for righteousness, justice, truth, and virtue.

-Transgression means breaking the law. It is like a man stepping across a line over which he has no right to step, invading forbidden territory, and crossing the boundary between right and wrong.

-Unrighteousness means injustice, wrong, iniquity, falsehood, and deceitfulness.

-Ungodliness means dishonesty, wickedness, and total disregard of God. It is treating God as if He did not exist. Ungodliness is not the same as atheism, which believes there is no God. Ungodliness is knowing there is a God, yet totally ignoring Him and His laws.

-Iniquity means to be lawless, either without the law or violating the law.

-Disobedience is the opposite of obedience. It means to ignore God and His law.

-Trespass means to leave the right path and cross the boundary from right into wrong. It is like being on another man's property where you do not belong.
4. Evil existed before man was created. Sin was originated by Lucifer, also known as Satan. The Bible records that Lucifer was a special angel who was originally created perfect by God. Lucifer sinned when he tried to stage a rebellion against God.
5. On earth, Lucifer (who became known as Satan) continued his rebellion against God after being cast out of heaven. When God created the first man and woman (Adam and Eve), Satan led them to sin against God. This rebellion is sometimes called "the fall of man", meaning that man fell from righteousness into sin. It is recorded in Genesis chapters two and three.

6. Eve put herself in a place where she was likely to be tempted--near the forbidden tree. Then she listened to the enemy, Satan. Next she looked longingly upon that which God had forbidden. Then Eve proceeded to take and eat from the tree. She partook of that which God had labeled SIN. The final result was that her sin affected Adam when she gave the fruit to him and he ate.

7. -Knowledge of good and evil: Immediately after the fall, Adam and Eve were no longer in a state of innocence. They recognized the difference between good and evil and realized they were naked and sinful (Genesis 3:7).

 -Self-righteousness: Adam and Eve tried to make clothing from fig leaves which is a type (an outward example) of what man tries to do spiritually. Realizing we are sinners, we try to better ourselves through self-improvement.

 -Fear and shame: When God came to walk and talk with Adam and Eve, they hid themselves in shame and fear (Genesis 3:10). Shame and fear are basic emotions from which other negative emotional responses emanate.

 -Separation from God: God did not remove Himself from man's presence, rather, it was man that removed himself from God. Adam and Eve tried to hide from God.

8. -Changed physical form: The physical form Satan used for the temptation was cursed. The serpent originally walked upright, but from this time on he wiggled on his belly through the dust.

 -Enmity between Satan and man: This was the beginning of what we call "spiritual warfare," with Satan struggling for the soul of man.

 -A crushed head: This penalty on the serpent is actually a promise to sinful man. Although Satan would "bruise the heel" of man spiritually through sin, the seed (descendant) that would come from woman would crush the head of Satan (Genesis 3:15).

9. -Labor a weariness: Prior to sin Adam tended the ground with joyful ease, but now he must labor hard. The ground that was once fertile and without pests or weeds became filled with thorns and thistles.

 -Death: The penalty of natural death.

10. -Sorrow in childbirth: The curse of pain and sorrow was placed upon child-bearing.

 -Subjection to her husband.

11. They were banned from the beautiful Garden of Eden.

12. Because of the fall of the first man and woman, sin passed on all mankind. That means everyone born inherits a basic nature of sin. Just as physical traits are inherited, the spiritual trait of the basic sin nature is inherited. Each person has sinned and faces the penalties of physical and spiritual death.
13. Through repentance from dead works and accepting Jesus Christ as personal Savior you can be "saved" from the penalties of sin. The solution to the human problem of sin is redemption through Christ (Romans 5:12-21; Romans 7:21-25; Colossians 2:13-15).
14. All deserve judgment for sin, yet Christ saves those who trust in Him for eternal life and forgiveness of sins (John 3:16). Believers who sin may be judged by the Lord for corrective purposes, yet do not lose their salvation each time they sin (Romans 8:37-39; Ephesians 2:8-9). Those who do not trust in Christ receive eternal punishment as their judgment (Matthew 25:46). Spiritual death, physical death, and eternal death are all punishments for sin, as are certain sufferings in this life. But beyond question, eternal death is the gravest punishment for sin imaginable because there is no other opportunity for reconciliation with God as it results in eternal separation from God (2 Thessalonians 1:8-9).
15. The penalties for unconfessed sin of believers includes:
 - Losing his joy and peace: Galatians 5:22.
 - Becoming a spiritual hindrance to others: 1 John 2:10.
 - Hindering their prayers: 1 John 3:19-22.
 - Grieving the Holy Spirit: Ephesians 4:30.
 - Feelings of shame at the Lord's return: 1 John 2:28.
 - Losing fellowship with God and other believers: 1 John 1:6.
 - Discipline from God for persistent sin: Hebrews 12:6.
 - Church discipline for certain sins: 1 Corinthians 5:4-5.
16. At the end of time as we know it, God will remove the curse and sin will no longer exist (Revelation 22:3).

CHAPTER EIGHT: SOTERIOLOGY

1. Soteriology is the area of Christian theology that examines salvation. Soteriology deals with the entire work of biblical salvation--past, present, and future.
2. Some of the important questions examined within Soteriology include the following:
 - What is salvation?
 - Why is salvation required?
 - How is salvation described in scripture?

- What are the meanings of the biblical terms associated with salvation?
- How is a person saved?
- How were people saved in Old Testament times?
- Is baptism required for salvation?
- What about those who have not heard the Gospel?
- Can a person lose their salvation?

3. We are saved from “wrath,”--God’s judgment of sin (Romans 5:9; 1 Thessalonians 5:9) and from the consequences of sin which is eternal separation from God--spiritual death (Romans 6:23).
4. When you repent and accept Jesus Christ as Savior, you are saved from sins of the past. As you seek forgiveness regularly (a part of the daily Lord's prayer) you are saved from sins in the present. In the future, you will be delivered from the presence of sin when you enter eternity to dwell forever with the Lord.
5. Salvation is required because of the original fall of man into sin, the dire consequences of sin, and the fact that the basic sin nature was passed to all people from that time on (Genesis 3; Romans 5; 1 Corinthians 15). The Bible teaches that all have sinned and fallen short of God's original plan that His glory be revealed in us. By nature, we are "children of wrath" and dead in trespasses and sin (Ephesians 2:1-3). Salvation is required for forgiveness of sins and access to the presence of God both now and for eternity
6. -Loss of innocence. Immediately after the fall, Adam and Eve were no longer innocent. They recognized the difference between good and evil and realized that they were sinful (Genesis 3:7).
 - Loss of relationship with God. God did not remove Himself from man's presence, rather, it was man who removed himself from God. When God came to walk and talk with Adam and Eve as He normally did, they hid themselves from Him.
 - Loss of emotional well-being. Adam and Eve experienced shame and fear (Genesis 3:10). Fear of the future and shame over the past are basic emotions which are the root of all other negative emotional responses.
 - Loss of godly righteousness. Adam and Eve tried to make clothing from fig leaves which is a type (symbolic) of what man tries to do spiritually. Realizing we are sinners, we try to better ourselves. We think self-improvement will eliminate our sin (Genesis 3:7), but our self-righteousness is as inadequate as the fig leaves were to cover Adam and Eve: *"But we are all as an unclean thing and all our righteousness are as filthy rags" (Isaiah 64:6, KJV).*
 - Loss of positive relationships with others. When confronted with their sins, Adam blamed Eve and she blamed the serpent. Thus, we see the first dysfunctional family

relationships emerge. It is not too long in the biblical record before the first murder occurs when their son, Cain, kills his brother Abel.

-Loss of eternal life. Adam and Eve would never have died had not sin entered into the world. Eternal life was lost through sin, which resulted in physical death coming into the world. The Bible says that all will die physically but, more importantly, it decrees that the result of sin is spiritual death through eternal separation from God.

7. -Innocence is restored. The Apostle Paul, who was previously known as Saul, had persecuted and killed believers before his conversion to Christ. Yet Acts 20:26 records that he proclaimed ... *"I declare to you today that I am innocent of the blood of all men"*. How could he say that? Because Paul had experienced salvation through Jesus Christ. Having asked forgiveness and accepted Christ's sacrifice for his sins, Paul was innocent before God.

-Relationship with God is restored. *"But now in Christ Jesus you who once were far away have been brought near through the blood of Christ"* (Ephesians 2:13, NIV).

-Emotional well-being is restored. Jesus dealt with the fear and shame that resulted from sin. He declared, *"Peace I leave with you; my peace I give you. I do not give to you as the world gives. Do not let your hearts be troubled and do not be afraid"* (John 14:27, NIV).

-Godly righteousness is restored. *"For it is not those who hear the law who are righteous in God's sight, but it is those who obey the law who will be declared righteous"* (Romans 2:13, NIV).

-Positive relationships with others are restored. *"We know that we have passed from death to life, because we love our brothers"* (1 John 3:14, NIV).

-Eternal life is restored. Through Jesus, you can have eternal life restored. Your physical body will someday die, but you will live on in eternity with God (John 3:16-17).

8. Compare your answer to the section in this chapter entitled "How Salvation Is Described In Scripture".

9. -Adoption. Adoption refers to God's decision to make us members of His family. He is our Heavenly Father, we are called the children of God, and we are brothers and sisters spiritually with all other true believers.

-Atonement. This term refers to the death of Jesus on the cross which atoned--or made amends--for the sins of mankind.

-Conversion. Conversion means "to turn." When it is used in connection with Biblical repentance, it means to "turn from the wrong way to the right way."

-Faith Towards God. Faith towards God is listed in Hebrews 6 as the second foundational principle of the Christian faith. Repentance from dead works must be combined with faith towards God in order to be saved.

-Glorification. Glorification will occur when you will receive your resurrected body and enter eternity.

-Justification. When you repent from sin and make a decision to turn from your sinful ways, this establishes a right relationship with God. This right relationship or right standing before God is called "justification" and is made possible through the death and resurrection of our Lord Jesus. You are justified, or brought into right relationship to God, by Jesus Christ.

-Propitiation. The basic meaning of this word is "satisfaction", meaning that the death of Jesus satisfied the righteousness of God in terms of a complete sacrifice for the sins of all mankind.

-Reconciliation. Once separated from God by sin, man now has access to Him through the death of Jesus Christ. The separation caused by sin has been bridged by the blood sacrifice of Jesus which reconciled us with God.

-Regeneration. Regeneration denotes the act whereby spiritually dead people are made alive through salvation. The word is used in Titus 3:5, but the concept is taught elsewhere through the terms "born from above" (John 3) and "born again" (1 Peter 1). It is detailed in the following texts: John 1:12-13; 3:3; Titus 3:5-9; James 1:18; 1 Peter 1:3; 2 Corinthians 5:17.

-Repentance. The basic meaning of the word "repentance" is a change of mind which results in a change in outward actions, a turning away from sin towards God and righteousness. This "turning away" confirms the inward change which has occurred.

-Sanctification. Sanctification involves three aspects: We were sanctified at the moment of conversion and declared legally holy before God (1 Corinthians 6:11). At the present time we are being sanctified as we are being transformed into the image of the Lord (2 Corinthians 3:18). In the future, we will be completely sanctified as we enter the presence of the Lord for eternity. The root of this transformation lies in our relationship with Christ (Romans 6:3-4), and the process is never completed in this life (Philippians 3:12-13). We are to aim for perfection (1 Peter 1:15-16) by deliberately putting to death the carnal nature (Colossians 3:5) and putting on the mind and attitudes of Jesus Christ (Romans 13:14).

10. The Bible says that all have sinned and fallen short of the glory of God (Romans 3:23). Your sins have caused a separation between you and God (Isaiah 59:2), and the end result is spiritual death (Romans 6:23). The only way out is to be saved by faith in Christ (Ephesians 2:8-9; Romans 5:1). Jesus died for the sins of the world (1 John 2:2). He is

the only way to the God the Father (John 14:6). He has all authority in heaven and earth (Matthew 28:18), including the power to forgive sins because He bore all the sins of mankind on the cross so that those who trust in Him would be saved (1 Peter. 2:24). To be saved you must believe that Jesus died for your sin, confess and repent of your sin, and accept Him as the sacrifice for your sin. You are saved by God's grace through faith.

11. The Bible is clear that salvation takes place by grace, through faith (Ephesians 2:8-9), and through Jesus Christ (John 3:16; Acts 4:12). In the Old Testament, people were saved by looking forward to the cross whenever they made a sacrifice for sin. In the New Testament, we look back to the cross by faith. No sacrifices are necessary, as Jesus paid the ultimate sacrifice for sin.
12. Salvation is based on faith alone, so water baptism is not required in order to be saved. The example of the thief on the cross confirms salvation by faith alone apart from baptism (Luke 23:39-43). Water baptism is an ordinance of the Church, and believers should follow the example set by Jesus and the command given by Him regarding baptism. It is an outward expression of the inward change that has occurred through the new birth experience.
13. Because the Bible does not specifically address this issue, we cannot make an absolute statement concerning it. However, since the Bible states that salvation is only through Jesus and that a person must receive Christ as Savior in order to be saved, then we can logically conclude that those who have not heard the gospel are lost.
14. There is much debate among Christians as to whether a person can lose their salvation. Some believe that a sinful lifestyle or rejection of an earlier commitment can result in losing your salvation. They base their belief on Hebrews 5:29 and other passages like Revelation 3:5. Others believe "once saved, always saved" based on Romans 8:1, 37-39 and other passages. They teach that a person who has truly come to faith in Christ can never lose their faith. This is sometimes referred to as "eternal security".
15. The most important thing in the debate regarding whether or not a person can lose their salvation is this: Once you have committed your life to Christ, serve Him obediently for the rest of your life and then you will be assured of your salvation and eternal life.

CHAPTER NINE: ECCLESIOLOGY

1. Ecclesiology is a theological study of the structure and nature of the Christian Church which is the universal body composed of all true believers in Christ.
2. Common topics include how the Church began, the organization of the Church, its purpose, the ordinances of the Church, metaphors that describe the Church, and the destiny of the Church.

3. The Church began on the day of Pentecost as described in Acts 2. See also John 16:13; 14:16-17; 16:26-27; and Matthew 16:18 for related passages. The Church emerged after the coming of the Holy Spirit through which all true believers are spiritually baptized into one Body.
4. Compare your answer to the discussion entitled "Organization Of The Church" in this chapter.
5. The purpose of the Church is to fulfill the mandate of Jesus in proclaiming the gospel to the world. Thus, the gospel message is at the heart of the purpose of the Church and is to be reflected in the lives and ministries of its members. The Church is to worship, praise, glorify, and pray to the one true God and is commissioned to establish and equip new believers in the faith.
6. The Holy Spirit provides spiritual gifts to enable the Church to fulfill their mission.
7.
 - No, Jesus had not sinned. He was sinless, but was setting an example for believers.
 - No. babies should not be baptized because they do not understand the meaning of the ordinance.
 - Jesus was immersed, and when possible we should follow His example.
 - As soon as proper instruction is provided and understood by the seeker.
 - Christian baptism is significant because it is a symbol of the death and resurrection of Jesus. It symbolizes death to sin as you are immersed in that "grave" of water and resurrection into a new life lived for God in righteousness as you come up out of the water. The believer who is raised up out of the water to live this new life does not do this in his own power. The new life is lived by the power of God, the same power that raised Jesus from the grave.
 - The biblical requirements for Christian baptism are instruction, repentance, belief, and a good conscience towards God.
8.
 - It was during the celebration of the Passover on the evening prior to His death that Jesus instituted this ordinance for believers.
 - This ordinance, known as the Lord's Supper, is an integral part of Christian worship as it reflects back on the Lord's death and resurrection and looks forward to His return in the future.
 - They were celebrating the Passover which was the most sacred feast of the Jewish religious year. It commemorated the final plague on Egypt when the firstborn Egyptians died and the Israelites were spared because of the blood of a lamb that was sprinkled on their doorposts.
 - "This is my body given for you; do this in remembrance of me." In the same way, after the supper he took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."*
 - The Apostle Paul wrote concerning the Lord's Supper: *"Therefore, whoever eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of sinning against the body and blood of the Lord. A man ought to examine himself before he eats of*

the bread and drinks of the cup. For anyone who eats and drinks without recognizing the body of the Lord eats and drinks judgment on himself" (1 Corinthians 11:27-29).

-To partake of the bread and the cup in an unworthy manner means disregarding the true meaning of the observance and ignoring the tremendous price our Savior paid for our salvation. It may also mean to allow the ceremony to become a dead and formal ritual or partake of the Lord's Supper with unconfessed sin. In keeping with Paul's instructions, we should examine ourselves before eating the bread and drinking the cup to be sure our sins are forgiven and our motives pure.

-We are to continue this ordinance until the Lord's return. The wine and bread used by Jesus at the last supper with His disciples were metaphors symbolizing His body and blood.

9.
 - The Body of Christ: 1 Corinthians 12:12-27; Romans 12:5; Ephesians 4:12,16.
 - The Body of Christ of which the Lord is the head: Ephesians 1:22-23.
 - The family of God, as we are all sons and daughters of the Lord: 2 Corinthians 6:18.
 - A pillar of truth in the world: 1 Timothy 3:15.
 - A vine and its branches: John 15:1-11.
 - The building of God: 1 Corinthians 3:9.
 - A living temple: Ephesians 2:20-21.
 - Each member is a living stone built on the cornerstone, Christ Jesus: 1 Peter 2:9.
 - A holy temple in which God dwells: 1 Corinthians 3:16.
 - A holy nation: 1 Peter 2:9.
 - A royal priesthood: 1 Peter 2:9.
 - Salt: Matthew 5:13-15.
 - Light: Matthew 5:13-15.
 - A sweet odor: 2 Corinthians 2:15.
 - The Bride of Christ: Ephesians 5:23-32; Revelation 19:7, 8; 21:9.
 - The flock of the true Shepherd, Jesus Christ: 1 Peter 5:1-3.
 - Saints: 1 Corinthians 1:2.

10. The Church will eventually be raptured to be with the Lord. Believers who have died will be resurrected, then those who are alive will be caught up together with them in the air to meet the Lord (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18). Believers will be judged on their ministry for the Lord, and rewarded accordingly (1 Corinthians 3:10-15 and 2 Corinthians 5:10). The Church will ultimately return with Christ to earth and rule with Him (Revelation chapters 19-20).

CHAPTER TEN: ESCHATOLOGY

1. Eschatology is the study of last things--events that will occur in the end times. The word comes from the Greek word *eschaton* which refers to the end or final things. In theology, Eschatology specifically focuses on the study of the prophecies of the Bible, primarily those prophecies that are yet unfulfilled--prophetic books and the prophecies given by Jesus.

2. The study of Eschatology is important because prophecy makes up a great amount of the biblical text. Eschatology also confirms the validity of God's Word as we witness prophesied events being fulfilled in detail. The study of Eschatology motivates believers to remain true to the faith as it gives details of their eternal destiny with God.
3. The subjects of Eschatology include the rapture, the Tribulation, the second coming, the Millennium, final judgment, and eternity. It focuses on the prophetic books of the Bible and Christ's prophetic teaching.
4. Most of these interpretations center on the exact timing of certain prophetic events or specific details of these events.
5. Compare your answer to the discussion in this chapter on the rapture.
6. Some people believe the rapture will occur before the period of time known as the Tribulation and that believers will not have to experience any of this terrible time on earth. Others believe the rapture will happen midway through this period and some believe the rapture will happen at the end of the Tribulation.
7. Compare your answer to the discussion in this chapter on the Tribulation.
8. Compare your answer to the discussion in this chapter on the second coming and the Millennium.
9. Compare your answer to the discussion in this chapter on the final judgment and eternity.
10. Daniel and Revelation.
11. The Harvestime *Legacy Bible Outlines* provides further study on Eschatology.
12. A short description of the prophetic books:

Isaiah: Warns of coming judgment against Judah because of their sin against God.

Jeremiah: Written during the later decline and fall of Judah. Told of the coming judgment and urged surrender to Nebuchadnezzar.

Lamentations: Jeremiah's lament (expression of sorrow) over the destruction of Jerusalem by Babylon.

Ezekiel: Warns first of Jerusalem's impending fall and then foretells its future restoration.

Daniel: The prophet Daniel was captured during the early siege of Judah and taken to Babylon. This book provides historic and prophetic teaching which is important in understanding Bible prophecy.

Hosea: Theme of this book is Israel's unfaithfulness, their punishment, and restoration by God.

Joel: Tells of the plagues which foreshadowed future judgment.

Amos: During a period of material prosperity but moral decay, Amos warned Israel and surrounding nations of God's future judgment on their sin.

Obadiah: God's judgment against Edom, an evil nation located south of the Dead Sea.

Jonah: The story of the prophet Jonah who preached repentance in Ninevah, capitol of the Assyrian empire. The book reveals God's love and plan of repentance for the Gentiles.

Micah: Another prophecy against Israel's sin. Foretells the birthplace of Jesus 700 years before the event happened.

Nahum: Tells of the impending destruction of Ninevah which had been spared some 150 years earlier through Jonah's preaching.

Habakkuk: Reveals God's plan to punish a sinful nation by an even more sinful one. Teaches that "the just shall live by faith."

Zephaniah: Judgment and restoration of Judah.

Haggai: Urges the Jews to rebuild the temple after a 15 year delay due to enemy resistance.

Zechariah: Further urging to complete the temple and renew spiritual commitment. Foretells Christ's first and second comings.

Malachi: Warns against spiritual shallowness and foretells the coming of John the Baptist and Jesus.

13. Compare your answers to the verses provided in the section on Christ's prophetic teachings in this chapter.